

ĐẠI LỢI - HÀNG NGUYỄN

mới

# BÀI TẬP

# TIẾNG ANH

DỰA THEO MÔ HÌNH TRƯỜNG HỌC MỚI TẠI VIỆT NAM (VNEN)

- ✓ Biên soạn theo sách giáo khoa dựa trên chương trình cải cách giáo dục mới
- ✓ Tài liệu tham khảo dành cho học sinh, giáo viên và phụ huynh
- ✓ Phụ lục có đáp án dành cho các em học sinh

8

BACK TO  
SCHOOL



NHÀ XUẤT BẢN THANH NIÊN

# UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITIES

## A. PHONETICS

### I. Read the following words and put them in the correct column.

break	pray	practice	bring	brown
pretty	prize	brave	print	brush
apricot	brother	prawn	breath	president
pride	bracelet	broccoli	april	brown

/br/	/pr/
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

### 2. Underline the words contain cluster /br/ and /pr/. Then read the sentences aloud.

1. The Vietnamese usually buy peach blossoms and apricot blossoms to celebrate Tet.
2. My brother practices Spanish pronunciation every morning.
3. Tuan is the president of stamp collector's club.
4. We are preparing bread and milk for the trip tomorrow.
5. My mother is making apricot jam in the kitchen.
6. She brushes her teeth and gets beautiful dresses to prepare for the first day to school.
7. She has a beautiful bracelet.
8. The president has set a new goal for the country.

## B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

### 1. Old one out.

- |                     |               |              |              |
|---------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. skateboarding | B. football   | C. novel     | D. badminton |
| 2. A. news          | B. comedy     | C. cartoon   | D. computer  |
| 3. A. adorable      | B. detestable | C. addicted  | D. hooked    |
| 4. A. poetry        | B. magazine   | C. newspaper | D. present   |
| 5. A. peach         | B. broccoli   | C. apricot   | D. grape     |

### 2. Write the name of the leisure activities under each picture.

			
1. ....	2. ....	3. ....	4. ....
			
5. ....	6. ....	7. ....	8. ....

**3. Write the correct form of the verbs.**

1. Vietnamese students love (go) \_\_\_\_\_ picnic at the weekend.
2. I hate (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ all day on (go) \_\_\_\_\_ fishing.
3. People in Britain love (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ tea with milk.
4. Do you like (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to music.
5. Does Anna fancy (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ horrible movies.
6. I prefer (make) \_\_\_\_\_ craft to (draw) \_\_\_\_\_ a picture.
7. Kate loves (hang out) \_\_\_\_\_ with her friends on her birthday.
8. I detest (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ fish.
9. Do you mind (turn) \_\_\_\_\_ off the TV?
10. Does she adore (work) \_\_\_\_\_ with handicapped students?

**4. Choose the correct answer.**

1. Do you mind \_\_\_\_ the air-conditioner? It is too cold.  
 A. turn on      B. turn off      C. turning on      D. turning off
2. Sitting too long in front of the computer makes your eyes \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. tired      B. harm      C. boring      D. relax
3. When you game online, be careful when you make friend with \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. girls      B. boys      C. strangers      D. your classmates
4. Anna prefers \_\_\_\_ TV to \_\_\_\_ books.  
 A. watching/reading      B. watch/read      C. watching/read      D. watch/reading
5. The phrase "window shopping" means:  
 A. buying a window      B. just looking without intending to buy  
 C. going shopping through the window      D. buying so many things at the same time
6. Do you fancy \_\_\_\_ origami?  
 A. making      B. make      C. doing      D. do
7. The sentence "c u 2moro" means:  
 A. See you tomorrow.      B. Nice to meet you      C. See you later      D. Let me see
8. I hate \_\_\_\_ up late to do homework.  
 A. staying      B. stay      C. get      D. getting
9. My younger brother used to detest \_\_\_\_ fish, but now he likes doing it.  
 A. eats      B. ate      C. eating      D. eat
10. Computers should only be used for \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
 A. limited      B. unlimited      C. limit      D. freedom

**5. Add the words or phrases in the box to each group.**

badminton	yoga	fishing	tennis	origami
novel	cake	DIY	friends	exercise
museum	picnic	newspaper	skateboarding	handmade cards
sport	to local	performances	a poem	

1. Playing: football, .....
2. Doing: judo, .....
3. Making: craft, .....
4. Visiting: relatives, .....
5. Going shopping, .....
6. Reading: book, .....

**6. Write some sentences about yourself using the following words:**

"like, love, enjoy, adore, fancy, dislike, detest, hate, don't mind"

*Example: 0. Like: I like watching TV.*

1. Love: \_\_\_\_\_
2. Enjoy: \_\_\_\_\_
3. Adore: \_\_\_\_\_
4. Fancy: \_\_\_\_\_
5. Dislike: \_\_\_\_\_
6. Detest: \_\_\_\_\_
7. Hate: \_\_\_\_\_
8. Don't mind: \_\_\_\_\_

**7. Each of the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify the mistakes and rewrite the correct sentences in the spaces.**

a. My friends and I are really keen on play computer games.

---

b. I really like to getting involved in team sports. It is good for building up co-operative skills.

---

c. Minh especially loving to spend her free time sleeping and being lazy in my room.

---

d. She enjoys go shopping on weekends and hang out with friends.

---

e. I am very interested in studying English.

---

**C. SPEAKING****1. Put the conversation in the correct order then practice with your partners. The first and the last are your cue.**

**A. Phuc:** I think that "Adeline" is more interesting.

**B. Phuc:** Yes, sure. I'm free.

**C. Mai:** Let's me see. We have "Tomb of the Pharaoh Queen"; "you are my grandma" and "Adeline". Do you love watching horrible movies or action movies?

**D. Mai:** Ok. See you soon.

**E. Phuc:** I will pick you up at 7:00. By the way, lend me your English exercise book.

**F. Phuc:** I am hooked on horrible movies.

**G. Mai:** Would you like to go to see a movie?

**H. Mai:** Are you free tonight, Phuc?

**I. Phuc:** Yes, I'd love to. Which interesting movies are on?

**J. Mai:** Ok. So we'll see "Adeline" in Platinum Movie Center at 7:30 pm.

**K. Mai:** That's interesting. Me, too. So we can choose "Tomb of the Pharaoh Queen" or "Adeline".

**Your answers:**

1. H	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.	11. D
------	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----	-------

**2. Read the conversation again and answer the questions.**

1. What kind of movies does Phuc like?
-

2. Is Mai hooked on horrible movies?

---

3. Where will they see the movie?

---

4. Which movies do they choose to see?

---

5. What time will they meet each other?

---

### 3. Give your own opinion for the idea:

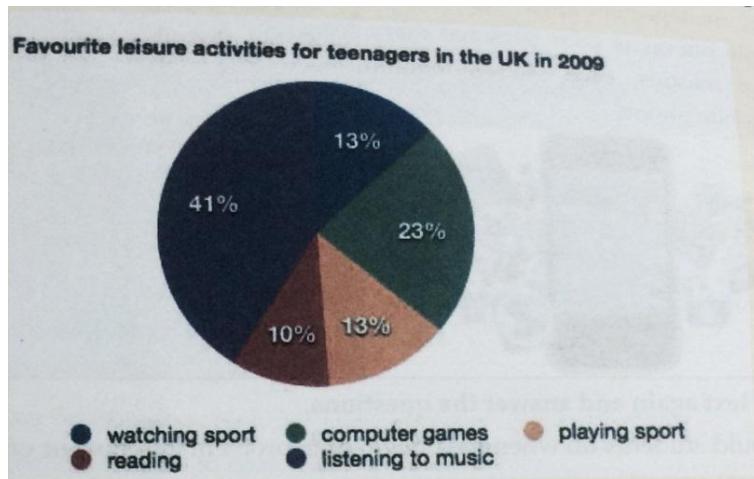
"Students should or shouldn't use computer?"

Agree	Disagree
<i>Reason 0: Students can learn English online.</i>	<i>Reason 0: using computer can be harmful for your eyes.</i>
Reason 1: _____	Reason 1: _____
Reason 2: _____	Reason 2: _____
Reason 3: _____	Reason 3: _____
Reason 4: _____	Reason 4: _____

➤ Now discuss with your partner about this topic using the ideas above to support your choice.

### D. READING

1. Look at the following pie chart on favorite leisure activities for teenager in UK and answer the questions.



1. What is the most favorite leisure activity for teenager in the UK?

---

2. How many percentages of teenager like playing computer game in their free time?

---

3. What is the least popular activity?

---

4. Are the percentages of students who love watching sports and playing sports equal?

---

### 2. Read the text and choose the correct answer.

### Advantages of mobile phones for students

It's very clear to all that mobile phones are really useful for students. If students have a mobile phone, then it's easy to contact anyone at their needs. For example, if a student has some problem in school or on the street after school, he can contact their parents immediately. So, the mobile phone is one of the best solutions for any emergency situations. And mobile phone also is a great equipment in order to improve knowledge and communicate with the world. Early morning it works as an alarm clock. Also, it works as reminder if you put some notes on reminder. You can take photos or listen to music anywhere you like. You can manage your spending or receiving money with the help of money management apps. You can use the mobile phone as your personal diary. For these reasons, each student should have a mobile phone.



1. The text is about on \_\_\_\_\_.

A. advantages of mobile phones for students.

B. disadvantages of mobile phones.

C. students use mobile phone all day.

2. For emergency situation, students can \_\_\_\_\_.

A. take some photos.

B. contact their parents immediately.

C. take a taxi to home.

3. Mobile phone can work as \_\_\_\_\_ in early morning.

A. alarm clock

B. reminder

C. money manager

4. Should students use mobile phone?

A. Mobile phone is very useful.

B. Yes, they should.

C. No, they shouldn't.

### 3. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. What should students do when they have some problem in school or on street?

---

2. Is mobile phone great equipment for students to communicate with the world?

---

3. What can we do with money management apps?

---

4. Do you think that each student should have a mobile phone?

---

### E. WRITING

#### 1. Complete the following paragraph with the words in the “organizing your ideas” box.

Moreover      Thirdly      firstly      for these reasons      secondly

(1)\_\_\_\_\_, playing game on mobile phone can cause eye's problems. (2)\_\_\_\_\_, mobile phone can change their way to some unwanted things. (3)\_\_\_\_\_, using many functions on mobile phone can make students to be addicted. They don't care about time for study and family. (4)\_\_\_\_\_, radiation from mobile phones can lead brain damage and cause bad health effects. (5)\_\_\_\_\_, parents should be considered before buying a mobile phone for your school children.

#### 2. Using the organizing ideas clues to reorder the recipe to make a pancake.

##### How to make a pancake

A. Firstly, mix the batter ingredients with a whisk until smooth and lump free.

B. Remember, don't add too much batter if you want the pancakes to be nice and thin.

C. Next, pour about half a spoon of batter into the pan and swirl around as soon as the batter hits the pan, this will distribute the mix evenly.

**D.** Yum! It's time for a special breakfast! Or perhaps you want to surprise a special someone. What could be easier, yummier, and more fun with pancakes.

E. Secondly, put a non-stick frying pan on the heat and add a small amount of oil.

**F.** To cook the other side either to flip it over and leave it for another 30 seconds or so to finish cooking.

**G.** Then, leave the pancake to cook for about 1 min or until it's just starting to pull away from the sides of the pan and is golden brown underneath.

**H.** Finally, transfer to a serving plate.

Your answers:

1. D      2.      3.      4.      5.      6.      7.      8.

**3. Base on the recipes to make a pancake above, writing a paragraph about 60-80 words about how to make your favorite food.**

*Your paragraph should include:*

1. What is your favorite food?
  2. What are the ingredients to cook it?
  3. How do you cook it? (step by step: firstly, secondly, thirdly etc.)

## Your writing:

# UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITES

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

- |               |            |             |                |
|---------------|------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. A. origami | B. prize   | C. divide   | D. like        |
| 2. A. comedy  | B. leisure | C. cinema   | D. celebration |
| 3. A. adore   | B. fancy   | C. attract  | D. alive       |
| 4. A. bread   | B. read    | C. meat     | D. peach       |
| 5. A. school  | B. church  | C. children | D. watch       |

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

- |                  |                |              |             |
|------------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. A. football   | B. windsurfing | C. badminton | D. aerobics |
| 2. A. volleyball | B. weather     | C. winter    | D. vacation |
| 3. A. climbing   | B. canoeing    | C. cricket   | D. cycling  |
| 4. A. leisure    | B. diving      | C. origami   | D. movie    |
| 5. A. adore      | B. enjoy       | C. fancy     | D. detest   |

### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

**1. Odd one out.**

- |                |               |                     |             |
|----------------|---------------|---------------------|-------------|
| 1. A. leisure  | B. magazine   | C. newspaper        | D. novel    |
| 2. A. adore    | B. enjoy      | C. detest           | D. fancy    |
| 3. A. market   | B. mall       | C. community center | D. mart     |
| 4. A. a comedy | B. a thriller | C. an action        | D. DIY      |
| 5. A. boring   | B. exciting   | C. interesting      | D. relaxing |

**2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. Nam is very \_\_\_\_\_. He takes part in many school activities.  
 A. sociable      B. society      C. social      D. reserved
2. My younger sister has found a \_\_\_\_\_ kit in the storage.  
 A. CD      B. origami      C. craft      D. book
3. Most students are interested in \_\_\_\_\_ sports.  
 A. to play      B. playing      C. play      D. plays
4. You use “\_\_\_\_\_” to giving your opinion.  
 A. according to      B. as I have noted      C. in my opinion      D. in short
5. Remember that it's easy to \_\_\_\_\_ online.  
 A. lie      B. lying      C. true      D. dishonest
6. Peter enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ origami with his friends at recess.  
 A. making      B. make      C. to make      D. makes
7. Some parents are thinking of banning children from \_\_\_\_\_ the computer.  
 A. to using      B. to use      C. use      D. using
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the head of school or college.  
 A. principal      B. president      C. prince      D. princess
9. We use phrase “\_\_\_\_\_” to summary our opinion.  
 A. in my opinion      B. for these reasons      C. in addition      D. firstly
10. Lan is hooked \_\_\_\_\_ K-pop.

- |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| A. at | B. on | C. in | D. to |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|
11. He regrets \_\_\_\_\_ school early. It is the biggest mistake in his life.
- |         |            |             |          |
|---------|------------|-------------|----------|
| A. left | B. leaving | C. to leave | D. leave |
|---------|------------|-------------|----------|
12. Mark gets the first \_\_\_\_\_ in IOE contest.
- |            |          |          |              |
|------------|----------|----------|--------------|
| A. present | B. prize | C. price | D. president |
|------------|----------|----------|--------------|
13. When you do \_\_\_\_\_ such as football, volleyball, you develop team spirit.
- |                       |                |                      |                          |
|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| A. outdoor activities | B. team sports | C. indoor activities | D. individual activities |
|-----------------------|----------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
14. Nick does leisure activities in his free time which makes he feels \_\_\_\_\_.
- |           |           |           |             |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| A. clever | B. stress | C. boring | D. relaxing |
|-----------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
15. "Do you love it?" can be abbreviated:
- |        |        |         |         |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|
| A. WBU | B. J4F | C. NUFF | D. DYLI |
|--------|--------|---------|---------|

### 3. Give the correct form of verb in the brackets.

1. Would you like (see) \_\_\_\_\_ her? I'm sure you will like her.
2. Do you mind (lend) \_\_\_\_\_ me a pencil?
3. Do you prefer (read) \_\_\_\_\_ novels or (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ TV?
4. I liked (read) \_\_\_\_\_ Doaremon comics when I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a child.
5. Nick enjoys (watch) \_\_\_\_\_ action movies in his free time.
6. I don't mind (do) \_\_\_\_\_ my homework but I hate (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ all night on it.
7. I used to (get up) \_\_\_\_\_ early when I was young.
8. Mai likes (sew) \_\_\_\_\_ her own dress and she wears the things she makes.
9. My younger brother used to hate (go) \_\_\_\_\_ swimming but now he loves it.
10. Nick enjoys (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to the melodies of Vietnamese folk songs.

### C. SPEAKING

1. Look at the pictures and say what activities you like or hate to do in your free time. Try to use as many different verbs of liking as you can, such as: love, enjoy, fancy, adore, hate, detest, be fond of, keen on...etc.

*Example: In my free time, I like to go skiing or I like going skiing.*

*I hate diving or I hate to dive.*



SKI



DIVE



SKATE



RIDE A HORSE



RIDE MY BIKE



SKIP



SAIL



ROLLERBLADE



SURF



SURF THE NET



CLIMB



SWIM



PLAY THE GUITAR



PLAY THE VIOLIN



PLAY THE PIANO



SING A SONG



JUMP



PLAY TENNIS



PLAY FOOTBALL

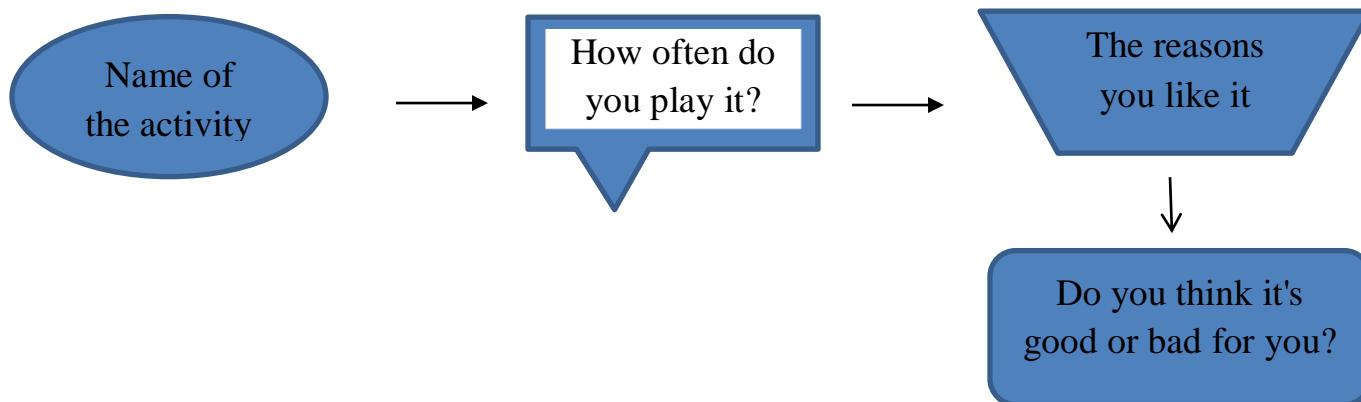


PLAY BASKETBALL

## 2. Work in pairs.

Tell your partner about the activity you like to do best in your free time.

Your talk should include the following information:



## D. READING

### Movies

**Harry:** Hey, Elizabeth, how would you like to go to see a movie tonight?

**Elizabeth:** Sounds great! What would you like to see?

**Harry:** I don't know...how about that new horror movie at the Arlington Theater?

**Elizabeth:** Oh, I heard about that. It sounds a little scary to me. I'm more into romantic movies. Or maybe a romantic comedy.

**Harry:** No way! I hate that kind of stuff!

**Elizabeth:** Really? Well then, what kinds of movies do you like?

**Harry:** I guess I'm really into action and adventure type of movies.

**Elizabeth:** Oh yeah, well I guess they are okay, as long as they aren't too bloody. I also heard about this great new musical that just came out. What do you think about that?

**Harry:** Musical? I don't know. That doesn't sound too exciting. Is there anything we can agree on?

**Elizabeth:** It doesn't seem like it. Oh, I remember another movie that came out last week. It's a mystery and it had a little romance and some action, too. I heard it's pretty exciting because nobody can guess who the killer is and it has a surprise ending. What do you think about that one?

**Harry:** I guess that doesn't sound too bad.

**1. Match the words in column A with their meaning in column B.**

A	B
<b>1. comedy</b>	a. scary movies
<b>2. drama</b>	b. movies about love
<b>3. romance</b>	c. movies about love
<b>4. comedy-drama</b>	d. funny movies
<b>5. horror</b>	e. funny plays about love
<b>6. document</b>	f. movies with a lot of action, for example fighting or hunting.
<b>7. action and adventure</b>	g. a play for theatre, radio, or television.
<b>8. western</b>	h. story of something that really happened

**2. Read the dialogue again and choose the correct answer.**

1. Elizabeth really hates action and adventure movies.  
A. True B. False
  2. Harry likes movies about love.  
A. True B. False
  3. A horror movie is scary.  
A. True B. False
  4. Action and adventure movies make Harry feel scared.  
A. True B. False
  5. A new mystery movie came out yesterday.  
A. True B. False

### **3. Read the article then answer the questions.**

## Take a Bath!

Traveling is fun because you can see how people in other parts of the world live. One thing travelers don't often think about before traveling is how other cultures bathe. And bathrooms in many countries may be different from the kind you are used to.

In the United States, most people take a shower once a day in the morning. The showerhead is usually mounted on the wall and cannot be moved. The bather simply stands under the water, gets wet, scrubs with soap and often a washcloth, and then rinses off.

Children often take a bath each night and enjoy playing with small toys such as boats and rubber ducks. Many adults, especially women, enjoy a soothing bath to get rid of stress at the end of the day.

It is important to remember that when you take a shower or bath in the United States, you should be careful to keep the water inside the bathtub or shower. Unlike bathrooms in many countries, there is no drain in the floor. If water gets on the floor it cannot go anywhere and must be cleaned up with a towel or mop. It can also cause problems for the floor. So be careful.

- ### 1. What the traveller don't often think about?

## 2. When do Americans often take a shower?

3. What about children? When do they take a bath?

4. What should you remember when taking a shower or bath in the United States?

5. Do you think that taking a bath can get rid of stress at the end of the day?

## **E. WRITING**

**1. Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences.**

- When/game/ be careful/ you/ online/, /when/ make friends/ strangers/ you/ with //.
  - We/ that/ can/ Kim/ likes/ see/ the/ piano/ playing //.
  - Such as/ hobbies/ or/ making/ things/ crafts/ collecting/ interesting/ are / some //.
  - health/ sitting/ problems/ all/ day/ in front of/ the/ can/ computer/ cause //.
  - fancy/ you/ do/ children/ with/ working? //

2. Many children say that they like watching TV in their free time. Do you think that watching TV is good or bad for them?

**Write a paragraph about 100 - 120 words using the ideas below to support your writing.**

<b>Good</b>	<b>Bad</b>
A great source of entertainment.	Cause health problem such as short-sighted.
Learn more new things about the world.	Take time away from other activities such as reading and outdoor activities.
An enjoyable way to relax.	Make children violent by some TV programmes such as boxing, WWE. etc.
Buy things easily via advertisement.	Encourage us to buy things we don't need.

## Your writing:

## UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Read aloud and put these words into the correct columns.

blossom	clothes	clock	close	possible
cloud	table	blunt	clear	click
class	cloud	blue	blog	club
black	Blow	circle	clown	block

/bl/	/cl/
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

#### 2. Underline the words contain cluster /bl/ and /cl/, then read the sentences aloud.

1. During Tet Holiday, the roads are full of peach blossoms and apricot blossoms.
2. When the clock strikes 10 p.m, most people living in the countryside turn the light off and go to bed.
3. Farmers cannot use blunt tools to harvest crops.
4. Children are always attracted by clowns' tricks easily.
5. In the sky suddenly appear black clouds, which forecasts it's going to rain heavily.
6. We can enjoy the peaceful atmosphere and see the clear blue sky in the countryside.
7. People should respect the circle of life to possibly live in harmony with the nature.
8. There are fewer clubs for rural children than urban ones.
9. Doing the shopping for clothes is my favorite leisure activity.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

#### 1. Odd one out.

- |                          |            |            |             |
|--------------------------|------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. A. cow                | B. buffalo | C. chicken | D. sheep    |
| 2. A. peaceful           | B. noisy   | C. quiet   | D. safe     |
| 3. A. buffalo-drawn cart | B. bus     | C. truck   | D. car      |
| 4. A. wheat              | B. rice    | C. corn    | D. crop     |
| 5. A. cattle             | B. house   | C. school  | D. hospital |

#### 2. Choose one noun from each box in Ex 2 and make a sentence using the corresponding verb.

Eg: Ride/ a horse => When I was young, I used to ride a horse.

1. \_\_\_\_\_
2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_

#### 3. Using the adjectives in the box to complete the sentences below.

peaceful	quiet	slow	safe
inconvenient	vast	friendly	nomadic

1. It is wonderful to lie and watch the \_\_\_\_\_ movement of clouds in the clear and blue sky.
2. In the countryside, people can see the \_\_\_\_\_ fields stretching to the horizon.
3. It is very \_\_\_\_\_ to live in the remote and mountainous areas because of lacking labour-saving devices.
4. People living in my village are very \_\_\_\_\_ and kind.
5. Be \_\_\_\_\_! The baby is sleeping.
6. It is \_\_\_\_\_ to go outside in the countryside, even at night.
7. The atmosphere in my village is very \_\_\_\_\_ with birds singing beautifully in the mornings. People live in harmony and help each other.
8. Some ethnic minorities have a \_\_\_\_\_ life. They have to move to get food and find new land to cultivate.

#### **4. Write the correct form of verbs in the bracket.**

1. It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ often hot in summer.
2. The children often go (swim) \_\_\_\_\_ in rivers after school.
3. It is necessary (water) \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers twice a day.
4. Farmers are always busy with (harvest) \_\_\_\_\_ their crops.
5. Mai (love) \_\_\_\_\_ (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to the morning sounds in the countryside.
6. My father always (make) \_\_\_\_\_ important decisions in my family.
7. In summer afternoons, children often (fly) \_\_\_\_\_ kites especially when it (be) \_\_\_\_\_ windy.
8. We sometimes (gather) \_\_\_\_\_ around the campfire and (listen) \_\_\_\_\_ to the elderly tell stories about my village's heroes.

#### **5. Use the adjective in brackets in their correct forms of comparison to complete the sentences.**

1. The buildings in cities are much \_\_\_\_\_ houses in the countryside. (high)
2. There are \_\_\_\_\_ trees in villages \_\_\_\_\_ in cities. (many)
3. Of three cattle raised in my village, chickens are \_\_\_\_\_. (popular)
4. The life in cities is \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ than in the countryside. (fast, convenient)
5. A village with only 13000 people is not \_\_\_\_\_ the city. (crowded)
6. Harvest time is often \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ for farmers. (busy, hard)
7. The city is \_\_\_\_\_. The countryside, on the other hand, is \_\_\_\_\_. (noisy, quiet)
8. The air pollution in cities is \_\_\_\_\_ in the countryside. (serious)

#### **6. Choose the correct answer.**

1. Some neighbors have a \_\_\_\_\_ relation as if they were relatives of each other.  
 A. open              B. close-knit              C. strange              D. bad
2. I wonder who live \_\_\_\_\_, country folk or city people?  
 A. happier              B. more happier              C. happlier              D. more happily
3. My father and I enjoy \_\_\_\_\_ kites and \_\_\_\_\_ in the west.  
 A. fly/watch              B. flying/watch              C. flying/watching              D. fly/watching
4. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ in the east and \_\_\_\_\_ the movement of clouds in summer sky.  
 A. rises/sets              B. sets/rises              C. set/rise              D. rises/set
5. A ger \_\_\_\_\_ is often seen on grasslands can be more easily put up than a house.  
 A. who              B. what              C. where              D. which
6. When my family goes camping, the most interesting thing is to \_\_\_\_\_ the tent.  
 A. put up              B. get up              C. take up              D. make up
7. Farmers who are working on \_\_\_\_\_ look very happy with shining smiles in summer days.

- A. grasslands      B. paddy fields      C. factories      D. construction sites  
 8. \_\_\_\_\_ is often the hardest but the most important time to people living in the countryside.  
 A. Tet holiday      B. Harvest time      C. Daylight      D. Travelling time

**7. Use the words in the right-hand column in the correct forms to complete the sentences.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ are very friendly and hospitable. (village)
2. My grandfather owns a valuable \_\_\_\_\_ of stamps. (collect)
3. Spring coming, the hills are \_\_\_\_\_ with many species of wild flowers blooming. (color)
4. Each nation tries to work hard to protect the world \_\_\_\_\_. (peaceful)
5. \_\_\_\_\_ a camel is the most exciting activity I have ever experienced. (ride)
6. Nomads usually move to get food and find lands to \_\_\_\_\_. (farmer)
7. Country children often react less quickly to technical \_\_\_\_\_ than city children. (develop)
8. You must drive \_\_\_\_\_ on the city roads or you will take high risk of getting accidents. (care)

**8. For each group, choose the correct sentence A or B.**

1. a. More industry and automobiles are concentrated in urban areas than in rural areas.  
 b. More industry and automobiles are concentrated in urban areas than in rural areas.
2. a. Air pollution in cities is more worse than in the countryside.  
 b. Air pollution in cities is worse than in the countryside.
3. a. The air in the countryside is fresher than in cities.  
 b. The air in the countryside is more fresh than in cities.
4. a. City children play less freely on the streets because of crowded traffic.  
 b. City children play more freely on the streets because of crowded traffic.
5. a. In the countryside, the life style is less faster than the life style in cities.  
 b. In the countryside, the life style is not so fast as the life style in cities.
6. a. Most people believe that country people live happier than city people.  
 b. Most people believe that country people live more happily than city people.
7. a. Farmers have to work harder in harvest time.  
 b. Farmers have to work more hardly in harvest time
8. a. The starry sky at night in the countryside is more clearer and more fantastic than that in cities.  
 b. The starry sky at night in the countryside is clearer and more fantastic than that in cities.
9. a. The cost of living in cities is more high than in the countryside.  
 b. The cost of living in cities is higher than in the countryside.
10. a. Life in a small town is less exciting than life in a big city.  
 b. Life in a small town is not so exciting than life in a big city.

**C. SPEAKING**

**1. Match the words in column A and the definitions in column B then make a complete sentence using relative clauses.**

A	B
1. A nomad	a. a place the Mongolian live in
2. A buffalo-drawn cart	b. a period of the year when farmers collect their crops
3. Harvest time	c. a vast area of grass for raising cattle
4. A ger	d. an activity for taking cattle out for food and looking after them
5. Meadow	e. a person who often move to find new lands for growing rice
6. Herding	f. a means for transporting and carrying heavy thing by using animals

**Your answers:**

1.

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

Eg: A ger is a place which the Mongolian live in.

**2. Make mini talk with some following topics.**

Eg: A ger looks like a huge tent. Putting up a ger is more difficult than a tent but less difficult than building a house. The Mongolian often put up gers for their nomadic life. A ger is very necessary for nomads.

A ger (lều trại)



A buffalo (con trâu)



A paddy field (cánh đồng)



Cattle (gia súc)



Harvest time (thu hoạch)



Dairy products (sản phẩm từ sữa)

**3. Fill the changes in the countryside that you have ever observed (or heard from your parents or grandparents) in the box below then talk about these changes.**

Things	In the past	At present
Roads	Eg: Dirt, stone, one lane for all kinds of vehicles...	Eg: Paved, more lanes for specific vehicles...
Trees		
Housings		
Means of transport		
Services		
Tradition		

Eg: There are a lot of changes in my village. First, roads are now paved and divided into more lanes for specific vehicles instead of dirt roads which have the only lane for all kinds of vehicles. Second, ...

**D. READING****Text 1: My Town-Newquay**

**My Town - Newquay**

by Alex Howarth,, 14

I live in Newquay. It's a small town on the Atlantic coast in the south of England. It has got great beaches and is the best place to surf in the UK. There are lots of surf schools where you can learn how to surf. I go surfing with my friends every weekend. My favourite place is Fistral Beach.

I love Newquay because there are lots of other things to do as well as surfing. If you like water sports, you can go kayaking, water-skiing or coasteering. Coasteering is different because it is rock climbing, jumping into the sea and swimming in the same activity, but you should always go with a special instructor.

If you like animals you can also visit the Blue Reef Aquarium and see lots of different fish and even sharks. You can also go horse riding on the beach or visit Newquay Zoo. There are lots of other attractions too like mini golf and bowling. Come and see for yourself

**1. Read the passage below and answer the questions.**

1. Where is Newquay?

2. What will you do if you don't know how to surf?

3. What can you do in Newquay besides surfing?

4. Why is coasteering different from surfing?

**2. Find the topic for each paragraph.**

Things to do in Newquay

Food in Newquay

The Weather in Newquay

Places to go in Newquay

The location of Newquay

**3. Read the sentences and decide them True or False.**

	True	False
1. Newquay is located in the north of England.	_____	_____
2. It is good to go surfing in Newquay.	_____	_____
3. The writer loves surfing very much.	_____	_____
4. Coasteering is similar to surfing.	_____	_____
5. Newquay is not a place for animal lovers.	_____	_____
6. There are a lot of outdoor activities in Newquay.	_____	_____

**Text 2: Living in the Country**

Living in the country without a doubt sounds appealing but it is highly important to be aware that country life is very different from what you have experienced during a few-day vacation and that the countryside has changed a lot in the last few decades. So before you start packing, you are recommended to take into account both the **pros and cons** of country life.

First of all, country life depends greatly on where you live because living in the country can mean a lot of things including living in a small village, a market town or an isolated place with the first neighbor living 10 miles away. **The latter option** sounds very tempting because it gives you all the privacy and peace in the world

you could possibly ask for. However, living far from the "civilization" also means living far from the shops, schools, pharmacies and other things city dwellers take for granted.

Many people who live in villages and market towns will say that city dwellers have more privacy and they are partly right. In the country, everyone knows everyone and everyone knows everything about everyone. People in the country are friendlier and more open but they are people. This means that they are naturally curious and that they may want to know too much about your personal stuff. But then again, people will only be as intrusive as you allow them to be.

Living in the country offers a number of benefits over city dwelling but it is not as idyllic as many people think it is. You are recommended to take time and think things through before you decide to move to the country and buy an old farmhouse. Also, keep in mind that you can also buy a small cottage with a lovely wood burning stove to have a place of your own to retreat when you need a break from the city.

### 1. Matching.

1. appealing, tempting	a. the stage of human social development and organization which is considered most advanced
2. isolated	b. stores sell drugs
3. privacy	c. be situated far from the main centers of population
4. pharmacies	d. attractive
5. civilization	e. extremely happy, peaceful
6. city dwellers	f. far from other places, buildings, or people
7. personal stuff	g. a small house, typically one in the country
8. remote	h. people who live in a city
9. idyllic	i. things belongs or relates to a particular person
10. cottage	j. the state of being free from public attention

#### Your answers:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

### 2. Choose the correct answer.

1. The same meaning with "pros and cons" is:
 

A. advantages and disadvantages	B. truths and lies
C. dos and don'ts	D. facts and figures
2. What should you do before moving to live in the countryside?
 

A. You should start packing your things.	B. You should start packing only your necessary things.
C. You should prepare money to buy a farmhouse.	D. You should consider the pros and cons of living in the countryside.
3. "The latter option" is:
 

A. Living in the country	B. Living in a small village
C. Living in an isolated place	D. Living in a market town
4. What sentence is NOT TRUE about living in the country?
 

A. People in the country are friendlier and more open.	B. It gives you more privacy than living in cities.
C. The countryside has changed a lot in the last few decades.	D. Country life is very different from life you have experienced during a few-day vacation.
5. How many cons in which living in the countryside results are said in the essay?
 

A. 1	B. 2
C. 3	D. 4

6. According to the passage, people who need a break from the city should
- take a vacation to the country
  - buy an old farmhouse
  - move to the countryside to enjoy the nature and breathe fresh air
  - buy a small cottage with a lovely wood burning stove

## E. WRITING

### 1. Rewrite the following sentences, using the given words.

1. No one can fly kites better than Hung in my village.

Hung flies kites \_\_\_\_\_.

2. People living in cities have to drive more carefully than those living in the countryside.

People living in the countryside don't have to drive so \_\_\_\_\_.

3. It is more difficult for people to find jobs in the countryside than in the cities.

People find it \_\_\_\_\_.

4. I have never seen such a beautiful picture before.

This is the most \_\_\_\_\_.

5. His house is the biggest one in the village.

None of houses in the village \_\_\_\_\_.

6. It is better for farmers to harvest their crops earlier than usual because of the bad weather.

In bad weather, the earlier farmers harvest their crops, \_\_\_\_\_.

7. More and more people love to live in the countryside than in cities.

More and more people prefer \_\_\_\_\_.

8. Some people think country folk are friendlier than city people.

Some people think city people are not so \_\_\_\_\_.

9. I haven't returned my village for 5 years.

It is \_\_\_\_\_.

10. A couple of father and his child spend at least 3 days and 2 nights living in a village in the program of "Daddy, where are we going?"

It takes \_\_\_\_\_.

### 2. Life in a small town or a village is different from life in a big city. Compare the life in countryside and in big cities from your observation or your own experiences. Use comparison forms to make your writing better.

*Eg: Life in a small village differs from one in a big city. The first difference is about the cost of living. The cost of living in a village is lower than that in a big city. Villagers usually produce their own food such as vegetables, fruits or even meat, so they don't need to buy such food with high prices.*

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

## UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in underlined parts.**

- |                 |             |             |             |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. A. fruit     | B. building | C. juice    | D. suitable |
| 2. A. village   | B. cottage  | C. marriage | D. massage  |
| 3. A. about     | B. today    | C. apart    | D. alive    |
| 4. A. although  | B. plough   | C. country  | D. though   |
| 5. A. architect | B. change   | C. children | D. watch    |

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

- |                    |              |               |                |
|--------------------|--------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. nomadic      | B. idyllic   | C. attractive | D. peaceful    |
| 2. A. experience   | B. happiness | C. memory     | D. childhood   |
| 3. A. privacy      | B. pharmacy  | C. vacation   | D. grocery     |
| 4. A. interesting  | B. idyllic   | C. natural    | D. beautiful   |
| 5. A. cultivate    | B. develop   | C. celebrate  | D. decorate    |
| 6. A. civilization | B. cultivate | C. decorate   | D. calibration |

#### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. There are millions of stars \_\_\_\_\_ the sky at night in the countryside.  
A. to                      B. from                      C. in                      D. on
2. Children often \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of noise, so adults often feel angry about that.  
A. do                      B. make                      C. give                      D. work
3. \_\_\_\_\_ the bad weather, farmers still work on their fields.  
A. In spite of              B. Although                      C. Because of              D. However
4. I am \_\_\_\_\_ on visiting my grandparents' on the weekend.  
A. fond                      B. keen                      C. interested                      D. bored
5. Their farms produce rice, crops, and dairy \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. facilities                      B. comfort                      C. products                      D. cargo
6. Some large cities have to find measures to protect them from air \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. rubbish                      B. garbage                      C. wastes                      D. pollution
7. The streets in cities are \_\_\_\_\_ than those in the countryside.  
A. crowded                      B. more crowded                      C. crowdeder                      D. less crowded
8. City drivers have to drive \_\_\_\_\_ than country ones.  
A. more careful                      B. more careless                      C. more carefully                      D. more carelessly

**2. Give the correct forms of verbs in the brackets.**

1. H5N1 virus (harm)\_\_\_\_\_ human body very quickly.
2. Vegetarians (live)\_\_\_\_\_ on vegetables, fruit and nuts.
3. Tina (sometimes, miss)\_\_\_\_\_ the bus to school.
4. She (not like)\_\_\_\_\_ housework at weekends.
5. They (eat)\_\_\_\_\_ two eggs every day. That (not be)\_\_\_\_\_ good for their health.
6. My mother and I usually (cook)\_\_\_\_\_ meals for my family but my father (seldom, cook)\_\_\_\_\_.
7. Hoa and Ba sometimes (not water)\_\_\_\_\_ the flowers in their garden.

8. My brother (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour (do) \_\_\_\_\_ his homework everyday

### 3. Odd one out.

- |                      |                   |                  |                 |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. charming       | B. disgusting     | C. tempting      | D. appealing    |
| 2. A. country people | B. villagers      | C. city dwellers | D. country folk |
| 3. A. markets        | B. shopping malls | C. shops         | D. supermarkets |
| 4. A. a cottage      | B. a ger          | C. a cage        | D. a house      |
| 5. A. grow           | B. collect        | C. pick          | D. harvest      |

### C. SPEAKING

#### 1. Describe the pictures.

Harvest time	Children flying kites on fields	Means of transport in the countryside
		
Air pollution in cities	Convenient life	Buildings, shops, malls in cities
		

#### 2. Choose one of these following topics and talk about it.

<b>Your hobbies</b> - What do you like doing? - When do you often do? - Why do you like doing these activities?	<b>Your best friend</b> - What is your friend's name? how long have you and her/him been friends of each other? - What does he/she look like? - What about her do you like most?	<b>Your family</b> - How many people are there in your family? Who? what do they do? - Who do you like most? Why? - What do you often do with your family at the weekend?
<b>Your hometown</b> - Where is your hometown? - What is your hometown like? - What do (don't) you like the most in your hometown? (people, the air, traffic,...) Why? or why not?	<b>Your daily activities</b> - What do you often do during a day (in the morning, in the afternoon, in the evening...) - Who do you do with? - What activities do you like the most?	<b>Your meal</b> - What do you often have for breakfast, lunch and dinner? - Who cooks meals for you or your family? - Do you like these food or not? Why?

### D. READING

#### A Harvest Scene

It was the middle of April. I had a chance to go to my village. The fields for miles around were full of yellow ripened crop of wheat. The fields waved in the gentle breeze. The air was full of peculiar scent. The scenery all round was most picturesque. The farmer's joy knew no bounds. He sang and danced with joy at the sight of a **bumper crop**.

The next day was the harvesting day. There was bustle and activity on all sides. The farmers with sickles and scythes in their hands set out to reap the ripe crop. They sang and danced to the beating of drums. They were mad with joy.

They sat in a line at one end of the field. They reaped and reaped till it was noon. The drummers went on beating the drums. At noon they stopped. They rested for a while and had their lunch. It consisted of chapattis with glassfuls of clarified butter and country-sugar.

After a little nap, they again set to work. They vied with one another in the output of their work. They were so happy at the prospect of a rich harvest that they knew no fatigue. They toiled from morn till night yet never felt bored.

As the sun set, the harvested crop was bound into sheaves. They were carried and stored in a safe place. The harvesting went on for a number of days. The farmers were very generous of hand. They gave freely to all who came to them for a handful of stalks. They were intensely happy at the fruit of their honest and diligent labour. They did not send away anybody empty-handed. They obliged one and all whether water-men, labourers, menials or beggars.

The harvesting time is a hectic time for the farmers. They are busy day and night. They know no rest. All hands are required. All young, and old men and women, are put to the job. There is a race against time. The harvest must be brought home in the shortest possible time for who knows the rains may come and spoil the whole show. The farmers bend all their energies to the task to avoid all risks. A harvesting scene is a rare scene. It is indeed a sight to see the farmers singing dancing out of spontaneous joy.

### 1. Match the words in column A to the correct meanings in column B.

A	B
1. peculiar	a. a tool with a semicircular blade, used for cutting corn, rice
2. picturesque	b. a tool used for cutting crops such as grass or corn, with a long curved blade at the end of a long pole
3. sickle	c. showing care in one's work or duties
4. scythe	d. different to what is normal or expected
5. reap	e. a person who lives by asking for money or food
6. diligent	f. a person who hires out boats or provides transport by boat
7. country-sugar	g. being free to do something
8. fatigue	h. full of continuous activities
9. toil	i. visually attractive, especially in a quaint or charming way
10. stalk	j. sugar made from any of various locally available sources
11. water-men	k. to cut or gather (a crop or harvest)
12. menial	l. a job without requiring many skills
13. beggar	m. extreme tiredness resulting from mental or physical exertion or illness
14. hectic	n. the body part of rice
15. spontaneous	o. to work extremely hard

Your answers:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.	11.	12.	13.	14.	15.
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----

### 2. Read the essay again then choose the correct answers.

1. The time that wheat is yellow ripened is

- A. in the early April  
C. in the late April  
**B. in the middle of April**  
**D. in May**
2. "a bumper crop" is  
A. a crop with high yield  
C. a crop with fatigue  
**B. a crop with low yield**  
**D. a poor harvest**
3. At noon, farmers  
A. rested for a while and had lunch  
C. took a nap  
**B. continued beating drums**  
**D. both A and C**
4. According to the essay, farmers were  
A. not willing to give freely to ones who want a handle of stalk.  
B. generous, happy and respectful the fruit of their honest and diligent labour.  
C. able to send away someone empty-handed.  
**D. not obliged to share their fruits to water-men, labourers, menials or beggars.**
5. Harvest time is described as a race against time because  
A. Farmers have to work hard day and night.  
B. It needs the efforts from all people even old or young men and women.  
C. Farmers have to bring their crops home in shortest time to avoid all risks.  
**D. Farmers toiled from morn till night yet never felt bored.**

**3. Summarize a day farmers work on their field in harvest time by organizing these following sentences in the correct order according to the above essay.**

1. As the sun set, the harvested crop was bound into sheaves which were then carried and stored in a safe place.
2. They sat in a line at one end of the field and reaped until it was noon.
3. It was in the middle of April that farmers started harvesting the fields of ripened wheat.
4. The harvesting went on for a number of days.
5. To reap the ripe crop, the farmers use sickles and scythes.
6. After a little nap, they again set to work.
7. At noon they stopped and rested for a while to have their lunch.

**Your answers:**

---

**E. WRITING**

**Imagine you could take part in a reality program and you had a chance to experience a day with a poorer family than yours in a strange village. It was in harvest time. You would help them harvest their crop and enjoy meals with them. Write about your experiences and feelings after the program.**

*Suggestions:*

- When did you start?
- What were your purposes to participate in this program?
- What did you have to do?
- What difficulties did you have when working with them?
- How did you feel about their poor life and hard work?
- What lessons did you learn from that experience?

## UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIETNAM

### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Put the following words in the correct column. Then say them aloud.

sky	stadium	sport	stilt house	spicy
skateboarding	sticker	skirt	display	festival
august	osprey	sculpture	spoon	screen
fast	spaceship	oscar	test	scarf

/sk/	/sp/	/st/
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....
.....	.....	.....

#### 2. Underline the words with the sounds /sk/, /sp/, and /st/. Then read the whole sentences aloud.

1. Tet is known as the biggest and most popular festival of the year in Vietnam.
2. The best time to visit the Hmong is during the Lunar New Year in late January or early February.
3. Children often wear new clothes and shoes on the first days of New Year.
4. Stilt house is one of the most traditional features of the Vietnamese culture.
5. "Cuop vo" (Stealing Wife) is another special Hmong's custom.
6. Many tourists are strongly attracted by self-woven scarfs there.
7. On Spring festival, Hmong women often wear their colorful dress.
8. In Vietnam, cuisine in the Central is spicier and saltier than others.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR.

#### 1. Odd one out.

- |               |            |                  |                      |
|---------------|------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. culture | B. bike    | C. language      | D. writing system    |
| 2. A. Thai    | B. Hmong   | C. Tay           | D. ethnic minorities |
| 3. A. hall    | B. temple  | C. swimming      | D. pagoda            |
| 4. A. costume | B. news    | C. magazine      | D. newspaper         |
| 5. A. table   | B. kumquat | C. peach blossom | D. apricot blossom   |

#### 2. Name the thing mentioned in the following picture.

		
1. ....	2. ....	3. ....
		
4. ....	5. ....	6. ....

**3. Insert word to complete the following sentences.**

Festival  
population

Buddhist pagodas  
languages

unique dish  
famous

Dance  
ethnic groups

1. When people enter \_\_\_\_\_, they are expected to remove their shoes.
2. Vietnam is a multi-nationality country with 54 \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Among ethnic minorities, the most populated are Tay, Thai, Muong...with a \_\_\_\_\_ of around 1 million each.
4. Because of the accent diversity, each ethnic group creates different \_\_\_\_\_.
5. There are many traditional \_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam such as Tet holiday, Hoa Ban Festival... and they are often organized in Spring.
6. If you have been to Hanoi, you should eat *Pho*, the most \_\_\_\_\_ in Hanoi because it has its typical and amazing taste.
7. *Mua xoe* is a traditional and typical \_\_\_\_\_ of the Thai people in the north-western provinces in Vietnam.
8. Most highlanders in Vietnam is very \_\_\_\_\_ with *Ruou can* (wine drunk out of a jar through pipes), especially in Central Highlands.

**4. Write the correct form of the verbs.**

1. YMoan is a famous singer for (sing) \_\_\_\_\_ songs about the Central Highlands ethnic people.
2. There are always cultural (differ) \_\_\_\_\_ in every country in all over the world.
3. Maya, an ethnic girl, always wants to (become) \_\_\_\_\_ an English teacher in the near future.
4. He hates (go) \_\_\_\_\_ out in winter because it is really cold.
5. While people in Hanoi love (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ lemon tea, people in Ho Chi Minh city like (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ coffee.
6. Long prefers (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ a self-woven scarf to shoes.
7. Do you mind (close) \_\_\_\_\_ the windows because it is too cold?
8. Would you like to (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ some coconut candies?
9. Do you like (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to Da Nang with my team?
10. Many people say that Vietnamese coffee is (strong) \_\_\_\_\_ than others.

**5. Choose the correct answers.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ color is the symbol of luck in the New year?  
- Red/Red is.  
**A. when**      **B. which**      **C. why**      **D. how**
2. \_\_\_\_\_ will go to the Central Highlands, An?  
- Mai will.  
**A. why**      **B. while**      **C. who**      **D. when**
3. \_\_\_\_\_ season in the year do Vietnamese people celebrate Tet?  
- In Spring.  
**A. which**      **B. while**      **C. what**      **D. how**
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is New-rice festival held in Vietnam?  
- In Lunar October.  
**A. when**      **B. how**      **C. what**      **D. why**
5. In a Giarai household, \_\_\_\_\_ has a more crucial role?  
- Women/ women do.  
**A. who**      **B. which**      **C. when**      **D. while**
6. \_\_\_\_\_ do children usually get in the first days of the New Year?

- Lucky money.  
**A. when**      **B. while**      **C. how**      **D. what**
7. \_\_\_\_\_ dance is a typical one of the Thai people in the North West?  
- *Mua xoe/ Mua xoe is.*  
**A. how**      **B. when**      **C. which**      **D. what**
8. \_\_\_\_\_ far is it from Hanoi to Da Nang?  
- It's about 750 kilometers.  
**A. how**      **B. what**      **C. when**      **D. why**
9. \_\_\_\_\_ does Hoa Ban Festival take place?  
- In Dien Bien.  
**A. how**      **B. while**      **C. when**      **D. where**
10. \_\_\_\_\_ does Hoa Ban Festival introduce?  
- The beauty of unique culture of the ethnic groups and cultural products in Dien Bien.  
**A. when**      **B. while**      **C. what**      **D. how**

#### 6. Fill each blank with a, an, or the to complete the following passage.

##### Hoa Ban Festival

Hoa Ban Festival (1)\_\_\_\_\_ famous festival in Dien Bien province. (2)\_\_\_\_\_ festival often takes place from (3)\_\_\_\_\_ 13<sup>th</sup> to 15<sup>th</sup> March. Each year there is (4)\_\_\_\_\_ great number of visitors there to enjoy (5)\_\_\_\_\_ beautiful landscape and interesting activities in (6)\_\_\_\_\_ festival. (7)\_\_\_\_\_ festival plays (8)\_\_\_\_\_ important role in introducing (9)\_\_\_\_\_ amazing landscape in Dien Bien to domestic and foreign tourists. Hoa Ban is considered as (10)\_\_\_\_\_ spirit of (11)\_\_\_\_\_ festival. Coming to (12)\_\_\_\_\_ festival, most visitors are attracted by (13)\_\_\_\_\_ impressive and simple beauty of *Hoa Ban* in beautiful landscape. Besides, (14)\_\_\_\_\_ festival aims also to show (15)\_\_\_\_\_ typical culture of ethnic groups and unique traditional products. In short, *Hoa Ban Festival* is always tourists' interest when they come to Dien Bien.

#### C. SPEAKING

##### 1. There is a dialogue between two students. Give the correct order of the dialogue.

- A. I think it's Odu group.
- B. Hello, Mai. I have just read a book entitled "the ethnic groups of Vietnam".
- C. It's the Viet or Kinh with over seventy millions according to a research in 2013.
- D. Hi, Long. It's great. Can you tell me something about it?
- E. How many people are there in the ethnic minority group?
- F. Bye, Mai. See you tomorrow.
- G. The Kinh has the largest population, so which is the smallest ethnic group in Vietnam, Long?
- H. Do you know which ethnic group has largest population and what its population is?
- I. I haven't ever heard this ethnic group before. Do the Odu mainly live in the western provinces in the South of Vietnam?
- J. Of course.
- K. That's interesting. I really want to know more what you've read in the informative book, but I have to leave here now. Will you still tell me about it tomorrow?
- L. You are welcome.
- M. Bye. See you soon
- N. It's about three hundred people.
- O. No, they don't. They mostly live in Nghe An province.

**Your answers:**

1. B	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.	11.	12.	13.	14.	15. M
------	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-----	-------

**2. Read the conversation again and answer the questions.**

1. Which ethnic group has the largest population in Vietnam?
- 

2. What is the population of the largest ethnic group?
- 

3. Is The Kinh group the smallest ethnic group?
- 

4. Does the Odu group mostly live in Hanoi?
- 

5. Where does the Odu group mainly live?
- 

6. How many people are there in the Odu group?
- 

**D. READING****1. Read the following passage and then answer the questions.****Ao dai**

Nowadays, the Vietnamese usually wear clothing in Western styles in their daily life. However, *Ao Dai*, traditional costume is always the first choice for Vietnamese people to wear on special occasions. It can be said that all the Vietnamese is proud of their traditional clothing. *Ao Dai* is considered as the most popular and widely-recognized Vietnamese national costume. The traditional costume concludes a long gown with trousers. It has elegant style and people are often comfortable to wear it. The white *Ao Dai* is the required uniform for girls in many high schools across Vietnam. Some female office workers are also required to wear the traditional costume. *Ao Dai* was once worn by both genders, but nowadays it is worn mainly by women, but men do wear it on some culture-related and special occasions such as weddings, Tet, and so on. Thanks to *Ao Dai*, the beauty of Vietnamese women is honoured, so it is hard to think of any outfit better-suited the Vietnamese than *Ao Dai* itself. Therefore, it is an ideal souvenir for foreign tourists upon leaving Vietnam, to remind them of a beautiful country that they have been to.

**Questions:**

1. Do the Vietnamese usually wear clothing in Eastern styles in their daily life today?
- 

2. Is the traditional clothing always the first choice for Vietnamese people to wear on special occasions?
- 

3. How do all the Vietnamese feel about Ao Dai?
- 

4. For whom the white *Ao Dai* is the required uniform in many high schools across Vietnam?
- 

5. Is *Ao Dai* worn mainly by men today?
- 

6. What is honoured thanks to *Ao Dai*?
-

**2. Read the text again and choose the correct answers.**

1. The text is about \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. introduction about Ao Dai      B. how to make Ao Dai      C. the white Ao Dai
2. When wearing Ao Dai, people often feel \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. uncomfortable      B. comfortable      C. funny
3. The white Ao Dai is the required uniform for girls in many \_\_\_\_\_ nowadays?  
 A. primary schools      B. high schools      C. secondary schools
4. When do Vietnamese men wear Ao Dai nowadays?  
 A. everyday      B. on the weekend      C. on special occasions
5. In the text, Ao Dai is an ideal souvenir for \_\_\_\_\_ upon leaving Vietnam.  
 A. foreign tourists      B. foreign journalists      C. foreign managers

**3. Read the whole text and choose the correct answers.****Central Highlands**

Central Highland, also known as Tay Nguyen, has been considered as a highly (1)\_\_\_\_\_ region in Vietnam. Although the land does not have the (2)\_\_\_\_\_ in developing economics, it is famous for its unique and traditional (3)\_\_\_\_\_. Each year the place has attracted a great number of (4)\_\_\_\_\_. Most visitors are impressed by the (5)\_\_\_\_ beauty of stilt houses, Gong culture and many traditional festivals. The Central Highland festivals are (6)\_\_\_\_ from a strong belief of local people in a God named Yang. The festivals often include cultural activities to (7)\_\_\_\_ the cooperation and attachment in the community. It also creates many chances (8)\_\_\_\_ residents to perform traditionally musical instruments. Some typical festivals in the land (9)\_\_\_\_ Buffalo Sacrifice Festival, Harvest Festival, Gong Festival and Elephant Race Festival... The Government and local people are trying their (10)\_\_\_\_ to protect and preserve the unique cultural values of Central Highland.

- |                  |                |                |               |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. rural      | B. mountainous | C. urban       | D. developing |
| 2. A. strength   | B. strengthen  | C. strongness  | D. strongion  |
| 3. A. mountain   | B. ethnic      | C. heritage    | D. culture    |
| 4. A. tourists   | B. journalists | C. chef        | D. teachers   |
| 5. A. stylish    | B. modern      | C. fashionable | D. ancient    |
| 6. A. originated | B. arrived     | C. start       | D. begins     |
| 7. A. strong     | B. streng      | C. strengthen  | D. strength   |
| 8. A. with       | B. for         | C. to          | D. into       |
| 9. A. is         | B. are         | C. such as     | D. like       |
| 10. A. good      | B. well        | C. better      | D. best       |

**E. WRITING****1. Write questions for the underlined parts in the following sentences.**

1. Vietnam has 54 ethnic groups.
- 

2. Kinh people account for 87% of the country's population.
- 

3. The other 53 ethnic minority groups mainly inhabit in mountain areas.
- 

4. Among ethnic minorities, the most populated groups are Tay, Thai, Muong, Hoa, Khmer, Nung...
-

5. The Vietnamese government has issued specific policies and special treatments in order to enhance the living standards of mountainous people.

---

6. People should make great effort to preserve traditional cultural identities of each ethnic minority group.

---

7. The Cham people once boasted a flourishing culture early in the history.

---

8. The least populated group is Odu with several hundred people.

---

9. The Yao people is always proud of their elaborate costumes.

---

10. The traditional cultural identities of ethnic groups are diverse and unique.

---

## **2. Write full sentences about Sapa by using the given words and phrases.**

1. Sapa/ mountainous/ district/ Lao Cai province.

---

2. It/ many wonders/ natural scenery.

---

3. The name "Sapa"/ literally/ mean/ "sand" (Sa)/ and/ "village" (Pa).

---

4. climate/ Sa Pa/ temperate and subtropical/ the year.

---

5. One day/, town's/ weather/ experience/ 4 seasons.

---

6. average/ air/ temperature/ Sapa/ 15°C. The average air temperature of Sapa is 15°C.

---

7. majority/ Sapa's residents/ ethnic minorities/ such as/ H'Mong, Red Dao, Tay...

---

8. Sapa/ kingdom/ fruit/ such as/ cherry, peach,...

---

9. Silver Fall/ one/ most attractive/ and/ wonderful/ landscapes/ Sapa.

---

10. Sapa/ famous/ unique/ festival/ called/ "love market".

---

## **3. How to make floating rice cake.**

**Read the note about how to make the floating rice cake. Then write full sentences to show a foreigner its recipe.**

<b>INGREDIENTS</b>	<b>DIRECTIONS:</b>
180g sticky rice flour 20g rice flour 200ml warm water 150g dark palm sugar balls Roasted sesame seeds	<b>DIRECTIONS:</b> 1. Prepare the dough: blend two kinds of flour with water. 2. Pinch a little dough, shape into a ball. 3. Boil water. Drop the rice balls in batches. 4. Wait until the balls float to the surface of the pot to take them out. Put them into the bowl of cold water right away. 5. Put the balls on a plate and sprinkle with sesame seeds and sugar.

## UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIETNAM

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

##### 1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part 1.

- |                       |                          |                      |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. castle          | B. <u>s</u> teal         | C. <u>s</u> tyle     | D. <u>t</u> ext    |
| 2. A. <u>s</u> cience | B. <u>s</u> chool        | C. <u>s</u> can      | D. <u>s</u> kim    |
| 3. A. <u>s</u> poon   | B. <u>s</u> py           | C. <u>r</u> aspberry | D. <u>s</u> peech  |
| 4. A. <u>s</u> cene   | B. <u>s</u> kateboarding | C. <u>s</u> kill     | D. <u>s</u> candal |
| 5. A. <u>p</u> assed  | B. <u>t</u> ext          | C. <u>t</u> est      | D. <u>w</u> restle |

##### 2. Write the right word or phrase under the following picture.



#### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

##### 1. Odd one out.

- |                       |              |                 |                 |
|-----------------------|--------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. ethnic          | B. newspaper | C. magazine     | D. book         |
| 2. A. Hmong           | B. Thai      | C. Vietnamese   | D. Yao          |
| 3. A. what            | B. which     | C. how          | D. this         |
| 4. A. who             | B. pizza     | C. Banh chung   | D. Spring rolls |
| 5. A. terraced fields | B. factories | C. supermarkets | D. stores       |

##### 2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.

1. Tet is an occasion for people to show their \_\_\_\_\_ to their ancestors.  
 A. respect      B. society      C. remember      D. reserved
2. Visitors find the Central Highland \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. attraction      B. attractive      C. attract      D. attractively
3. Most ethnic minorities live in \_\_\_\_\_ areas.  
 A. mountainous      B. rural      C. urban      D. modern
4. You use “\_\_\_\_\_” to show your joy and excitement, especially in a match.  
 A. cheese      B. cheer      C. cherry      D. cheek

5. Children often get \_\_\_\_\_ money on the first days of Tet.  
 A. lucky              B. luck              C. luckiness              D. luckily
6. Ha Long Bay has been considered as a world \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. scene              B. landscape              C. sightseeing              D. heritage
7. In Vietnam, \_\_\_\_\_ Festival is known as a festival for children.  
 A. Hoa Ban              B. Mid-Autumn              C. Tet              D. Vu Lan
8. "Khen" is a \_\_\_\_\_ instrument of the Central Highland.  
 A. traditionally              B. tradition              C. traditional              D. trade
9. Hmong is an ethnic \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. minority              B. area.              C. people              D. region.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ is the largest ethnic group? - The Kinh  
 A. whom              B. when              C. who              D. why

### 3. Read the text and choose the correct answers.

#### Mid-Autumn Festival

There are hundreds of festivals in Vietnam each year. (1)\_\_\_\_\_ Tet holiday, the Mid-Autumn festival is one of the most famous festivals and it is a traditional celebration for Vietnamese (2)\_\_\_\_\_.

The Mid-Autumn festival is (3)\_\_\_\_\_ on the 15<sup>th</sup> day on the 8<sup>th</sup> lunar month (often in late September or early October) in the middle of (4)\_\_\_\_\_ and it is celebrated for a whole day. On this day, the adults and the parents prepare a special cake called (5)\_\_\_\_\_ cake along with many candies, jellies, grapefruit, bananas, apples, etc. The Mid-Autumn celebration is an opportunity for (6)\_\_\_\_\_ members to reunite. Young people (7)\_\_\_\_\_ their gratitude to the elderly.

- |                |              |               |              |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. the      | B. therefore | C. besides    | D. so        |
| 2. A. children | B. child     | C. girls      | D. boys      |
| 3. A. held     | B. remember  | C. hold       | D. celebrate |
| 4. A. spring   | B. autumn    | C. summer     | D. winter    |
| 5. A. sun      | B. star      | C. moon       | D. cloud     |
| 6. A. royal    | B. club      | C. school     | D. family    |
| 7. A. see      | B. express   | C. strengthen | D. have      |

### 4. Write the suitable words.

while	When	after	so	because
however	although	when	to	which

- It is organized in the middle of the Autumn \_\_\_\_\_ is the eighth lunar month of the year.
- Each person holds a private feeling \_\_\_\_\_ they come to Yen Tu Festival.
- \_\_\_\_\_, to make your trip to the town more interesting, tourists are advised to spend their time tasting some good quality street food.
- \_\_\_\_\_, prepare for a memorable festival, all people clean their house and purchase lots of things.
- \_\_\_\_\_, coming to Da Lat, tourists will be surprised at a spaces of flower.
- \_\_\_\_\_, the family meal, many Vietnamese attend the local pagoda to worship ancestors.
- We love Tet \_\_\_\_\_ it is a long holiday and we can receive lucky money.
- At Mid-Autumn Festival, children can enjoy the exciting atmosphere and eat many delicious moon cakes. \_\_\_\_\_ most children like it so much.
- \_\_\_\_\_, he misses his parents so much, he cannot come home on Tet holiday.
- \_\_\_\_\_, my parents go to Nha Trang, Lan is doing her homework.

### C. SPEAKING

**1. Reorder the following dialogue.**

- A. Thank you for spending time with us.  
 B. It's great. I've never eaten so many rambutans in my life. They are so sweet and fresh. Particularly you can pick them yourself and eat them fresh from the tree.  
 C. Yes, I once visited a fruit garden in Cai Be, Tien Giang province in the rambutan – "chom chom" season.  
 D. So, how about the people?  
 E. Thank you for your attendance in our program today. Have you ever gone to the countryside, Phong?  
 F. How do you feel about your trip?  
 G. Do you think it's a fantastic experience in your life?  
 H. The local people? They're so friendly and simple.  
 I. Of course. It's the most memorable trip I've ever had.  
 J. And. Are there things you don't like when coming there?  
 K. It's my pleasure.  
 L. What I don't like? Maybe it's the weather. It's very hot, so sometimes I felt tired.

**Your answers:**

1. E	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.	11.	12. K
------	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----	-----	-------

**2. Answer the following questions according to the above dialogue.**

1. Has Phong ever been to the countryside?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. When did he go to Cai Be fruit garden?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. Which fruit did Phong eat a lot when being there?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. How does rambutan taste?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. Can he pick rambutan himself from the tree?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. How does he feel about the local people?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
7. What does he not like about the trip?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
8. Is it the most memorable experience in his life?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

**D. READING****Read the following passage:****Vietnamese cuisine**

Vietnamese cuisine is extremely diverse. It is often divided into three main categories, according to three main regions (north, central and south). There is little oil and many vegetables in Vietnamese foods. The main ingredients of dish are based on rice, vegetables, soy sauce, and *nuoc mam*- fish sauce. Its characteristic flavors are sweet, spicy, sour, special flavor of fish sauce. Besides, Vietnamese cuisine is also flavored by a variety of mint and basil.

Currently, Vietnamese cuisine has been gaining popularity and can be found widely in many other countries such as the United States, Australia, Canada, South Korea, Laos, Japan, China, Malaysia, and France. Vietnamese cuisine is recognized for its strict and choosy selection of ingredients. A Vietnamese chef generally will prefer native ingredients because of its typical and fresh flavor, which make each Vietnamese dish have a taste of nature. This is a reason why Vietnamese cuisine is known as a diverse and healthy cuisine.

### **1. Read the above questions and then answer the questions.**

1. How is Vietnamese cuisine?

---

2. How many kinds of foods are there in Vietnamese cuisine?

---

3. Is there a lot of oil and vegetables in Vietnamese food?

---

4. What are the major components of Vietnamese dish based on?

---

5. Are Vietnamese dishes found widely in many countries?

---

6. Is Vietnamese cuisine recognized for its strict and choosy selection of ingredients?

---

7. Why does a Vietnamese chef generally prefer native ingredients?

---

8. Is Vietnamese cuisine known as an unhealthy cuisine?

---

### **2. Read the text again and choose the correct answers.**

1. The text is about \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. Vietnamese fish sauce      B. Vietnamese cuisine      C. Vietnamese chef
2. The word "it" in the second sentence implies \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the whole first sentence      B. diverse      C. Vietnamese cuisine
3. Vietnamese cuisine is often considered to be \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. sweet      B. spicy      C. diverse
4. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnamese food?  
 A. herbal      B. fish sauce      C. vegetables
5. Which flavor is not characteristic in Vietnamese cuisine?  
 A. bitter      B. spicy      C. sweet
6. In the text, Vietnamese foods can be found widely in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. Irak      B. America      C. Uruguay
7. The word "ingredient" in the text has the same meaning with \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. compoment      B. component      C. compernent
8. Who generally prefer native ingredients because of its typical and fresh flavor?  
 A. Vietnamese chef      B. Vietnamese teacher      C. Vietnamese parents

**3. Read the following text and answer the questions.**

Dinh Thu Ha is a girl of the Muong ethnic group in a mountainous village in Ba Vi district. She is now in grade 8A in Ba Vi Secondary School. In her class, she and her classmates always get on well together. Her classmates are from other ethnic groups such as the Tay, Nung... and all of them are very friendly. When going to school, she often wears a uniform instead of wearing her traditional costumes. Like other students, Ha likes reading short stories, watching shows for kids on television, and playing outside with her friends. She can speak both the Muong and the Kinh languages well. She is very outstanding at school because she is an excellent student. Particularly she is good at Maths and English. She always wants to become a Maths teacher in the future.

**Questions**

1. Which ethnic group is Ha from?

---

2. Which grade is she in?

---

3. Do she and her classmates get on well together?

---

4. What does she often wear at school?

---

5. How are her classmates?

---

6. What activities does she like to do?

---

7. Can she speak both the Muong and the Kinh languages well?

---

8. Why is she famous at school?

---

9. What subjects is she good at?

---

10. What profession does she want to be when she grows up?

---

**4. Read the above text again and make the questions.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
- in a mountainous village in Ba Vi district.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
- in Ba Vi Secondary School.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
- No, they don't. They come from many different ethnic groups.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
- No, she doesn't. She often wears a uniform.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
- Yes, she does. She really likes reading short stories.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
- She can speak the Muong and Kinh languages well.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
- No, she doesn't. She just watches shows for kids, not for adult.

8. \_\_\_\_\_?

- No, she doesn't. She wants to teach Maths, not English in the future.

## E. WRITING

### 1. Rearrange the words/phrases given to make complete sentences.

1. For/ ethnic groups/ in/ many/ the/ the/ the/ mountains/, /horse/ is/ suitable/ most/ means of transport.

2. groups/ how/ there/ many/ Vietnam/ ethnic/ are/ in/?

3. or/ you/ would/ urban/ like/ to/ mountainous/ live/ in/ in/ the/ the/ areas/ areas?

4. do /Khmer Krom/ when/ women/ of/ village/ this/ to/ the /river bank/?/go

5. most/ our/ festival/ important /Chol Chnam Thmay/ of/ the/ is/ the year.

6. Khmer Krom/ is groups/ of/ one/ the/ ethnic/ in/ the/ southern/ biggest/ Vietnam.

7. these/ love/ of/ costumes/, /pink/ I/ traditional/ most/ the/ one.

8. are/ the/ their/ Yao/ famous/ people/ costumes/ celebrate/ for.

9. Hung Kings/ Festival/ is/ Vietnam/ a/ significant/ Temple/ festival/ in.

10. held/ annually/ the/ the/ Gong/ Central/ Festival/ is/ in/ Highlands.

### 2. Make questions for the underlined parts.

1. \_\_\_\_\_?

- Yes it's. Terraced field is characteristic in Sapa.

2. \_\_\_\_\_?

- I would like to visit the mountains.

3. \_\_\_\_\_?

- There are festivals in Vietnam through every year.

4. \_\_\_\_\_?

- Long goes to the beach in the morning.

5. \_\_\_\_\_?

- The sea is vast and quiet.

6. \_\_\_\_\_?

- Gong culture covers five provinces of the Central Highlands: Kon Tum, Gia Lai, Dak Lak, Dak Nong, and Lam Dong.

7. \_\_\_\_\_?

- The Gong Festival is held annually in the Central Highlands.

8. \_\_\_\_\_?

- The gong sound is a way to communicate with gods.

9. \_\_\_\_\_?

- The gongs are musical instruments of special power.

10. \_\_\_\_\_?

- Gongs are associated with special occasions in people's lives, such as the building of new houses, funerals, crop praying ceremonies, a new harvest, etc.

**3. Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.**

1. Lan Anh enjoys to watch cartoons on TV.

2. What many students are there in Long's class?

3. She always tries to complete her homework before to watch her favorite show on TV.

4. Tuan are lucky to enjoy a British festival when coming to be there.

5. For some people, washing clothes are hard work.

6. There is the beautiful clock on the wall.

7. While we were young, we used to have a chance to visit Brazil.

8. *Hoa Ban Festival* is always full of songs and prayers.

9. The 54 ethnic peoples of Vietnam live peaceful.

10. There are always regional differences in every countries.

**WRITTEN TEST 1****Time: 45 minutes****A. PHONETICS****1. Find the words that has different stress pattern in each line.**

- |                 |           |            |            |
|-----------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. A. brother   | B. breath | C. breathe | D. bathe   |
| 2. A. sugar     | B. sky    | C. soil    | D. sea     |
| 3. A. scan      | B. school | C. skim    | D. science |
| 4. A. raspberry | B. spoon  | C. spam    | D. special |

**B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY****1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. They spent 2 hours \_\_\_\_\_ how to make Chung Cake.  
A. to learn      B. learn      C. learning      D. to learning
2. Linda is \_\_\_\_\_ in handmade products.  
A. interested      B. bored      C. interesting      D. boring
3. Vietnam is a multi-cultural country with over 50 \_\_\_\_\_ groups.  
A. multi-cultural      B. rich      C. ethnic      D. major
4. Country children play \_\_\_\_\_ on streets than city children.  
A. more free      B. freelier      C. freer      D. more freely
5. Peter enjoys \_\_\_\_\_ the movement of clouds on the sky.  
A. lie and watch      B. lying and watching      C. to lie and to watch      D. to lie and to watch
6. Parents often prevent their children \_\_\_\_\_ the computer games.  
A. from playing      B. to play      C. to playing      D. playing
7. Banh chung is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ foods in Vietnam.  
A. complex      B. traditional      C. disgust      D. tasteless
8. Storms \_\_\_\_\_ most of the crops, which affects peasants' life.  
A. destroy      B. destructive      C. destruction      D. destroying
9. When you do \_\_\_\_\_ such as football, volleyball, you develop team spirit.  
A. outdoor activities      B. team sports      C. indoor activities      D. individual activities
10. To \_\_\_\_\_ Tet, Vietnamese people often make many tasty traditional foods.  
A. celebrate      B. make      C. have      D. create

**2. Complete the passage with the following words.**

happiness      worshipping      belief  
made      region      from

Rice is an object for (1)\_\_\_\_\_ in many temples of Vietnam. It is said to originate (2)\_\_\_\_\_ the Mother Goodness Worshipping, the most long-standing (3)\_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam. The word "Happiness" in ancient Vietnamese is the image of many rice plants and a square symbolizing a paddy field. Rice is not only (4)\_\_\_\_\_, it really forms Vietnamese. Accordingly, many main dishes and snacks in Vietnam are (5)\_\_\_\_\_ from rice: boiled rice in daily meal, rice porridge, steamed rice, glutinous rice cake, well-known Banh chung and uncountable made-from-rice dishes from every (6)\_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam.

**C. READING****1. Read the dialogue again and choose the correct answer.**

- Harry:** Good morning, how are you going?
- Lam:** Hi, I'm pretty good. How do you do?
- Harry:** I'm okay, what did you do yesterday? Was there anything interesting?
- Lam:** Well, not much. The most interesting thing to me is to watch a program called "Daddy, where are we going" on TV with my family.
- Harry:** That's so great. This is the first time I heard about it. So quickly tell me something special about this program.
- Lam:** Calm down. Actually, the program is about 4 couples of father and his son or his daughter who are celebrities or have no time to play together. They will spend at least three days and 2 nights living in the countryside far from their home. They also have chances to experience the life in the countryside and create memorable moments with each other.
- Harry:** It sounds exciting. Anything else?
- Lam:** Uhm, you know, these fathers usually work far from home or go on a business trip, so they don't spend enough time taking care of their children. This program creates challenges which require both fathers and sons to work together or to work with other fathers and sons. Thanks to these challenges, their relationship will be tightened more and more.
- Harry:** How great it is! How about yesterday's episode?
- Lam:** They went to a floating village in the southwest of Vietnam. They live with people there and clear the missions that the organizers gave. Among them, I was impressed by the mission of making Chung cake. They made Chung cakes, boiling them and then gave them to other families there in order to express their gratefulness.
- Harry:** Oh, what an amazing program! Anyway, I really want to watch the program this week. When is it shown? What time?
- Lam:** At 12 am on Saturday.
- Harry:** It's time for family lunch, right? I am awaiting for it. Thank you. See you later.
- Lam:** Have you a good time. Bye.

*Questions:*

1. What are they talking about?
 

<b>A.</b> a trip to the countryside	<b>B.</b> a TV program about fathers and their children
<b>C.</b> an advertisement on TV	<b>D.</b> a newspaper about fathers and their children
2. The name of the program is:
 

<b>A.</b> Mommy, where are you?	<b>B.</b> Daddy, where are you?
<b>C.</b> Mommy, where are we going?	<b>D.</b> Daddy, where are we going?
3. What was Lam impressed about yesterday's program?
 

<b>A.</b> Fathers and sons or daughters went to the countryside for living.	<b>B.</b> Fathers and sons or daughters made Chung cakes together.
<b>C.</b> Fathers and sons or daughters have chances to live with country folk.	<b>D.</b> Fathers and sons or daughters are celebrities whom Lam loves.
4. What does Harry want to do after talking to Lam?
 

<b>A.</b> He wants to watch the program.	<b>B.</b> He wants to take part in the program.
<b>C.</b> He wants to talk to his friends about the program.	<b>D.</b> He want to eat lunch and watch the program.
5. When does the program start?
 

<b>A.</b> In the morning on Saturday	<b>B.</b> At noon on Sunday
<b>C.</b> At noon on Saturday	<b>D.</b> In the afternoon on Saturday

## 2. Read the text and answer the questions

### Hue Festival

Hue Festival is a big cultural event of Hue City that is held every two years. The first Hue Festival took place in 2000.

At the beginning of Hue Festival, visitors can enjoy a colorful opening ceremony with unique performances of several art groups from Vietnam and other countries. Besides, visitors can come and enjoy "Ao dai" Grand Show, "Oriental night" Show, and sporting activities like boat race, human chess, etc. Particularly, the ancient scenery of Nguyen Dynasty is also reproduced. The Royal Refined Music of Hue was recognized as a Masterpiece of the Oral and Intangible Heritage of Humanity by UNESCO in 2003.

Hue festival is well-known as an international festival because the traditional and cultural values from Vietnam and other countries are widely presented to the world in this festival.

#### Questions

1. The text is about \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. Hue festival  
 C. A festival in Vietnam  
 B. Hue city  
 D. Traditional and cultural values of Vietnam
2. When was the first Hue Festival celebrated?  
 A. two years ago  
 C. 2000  
 B. many years ago  
 D. 2003.
3. How often is Hue Festival taken place?  
 A. every two days  
 C. every two months  
 B. every two weeks  
 D. every two years
4. Visitors can enjoy a colorful opening ceremony with unique performances of several art groups from \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. Vietnam  
 C. Vietnam and other countries.  
 B. Vietnam and Laos  
 D. Many countries
5. What don't visitors enjoy in this festival?  
 A. "Oriental night" Show  
 C. sporting activities  
 B. "Ao dai" Grand Show  
 D. horrible film
6. The ancient scenery of which dynasty is reproduced in Hue Festival?  
 A. Nguyen Dynasty  
 C. Tran Dynasty  
 B. Le Dynasty  
 D. Ly Dynasty
7. When was the Royal Refined Music of Hue recognized as a Masterpiece of the Oral and Intangible Heritage of Humanity by UNESCO?  
 A. 2000  
 C. 2005  
 B. 2003  
 D. 2007
8. Why is Hue Festival well-known as an international festival?  
 - It's because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the traditional and cultural values from Vietnam are widely presented to the world in this festival.  
 B. the traditional and cultural values from other countries are widely presented to the world in this festival.  
 C. A& B  
 D. Not given

#### D. WRITING

##### 1. Make the questions from the underlined words or phrases.

1. Hoi An is on the bank of Thu Bon river in the central of Quang Nam province.

=> \_\_\_\_\_

2. Hoi An was recognized as the World heritage by UNESCO because it is one of the most unique and ancient towns in the world.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
3. Hoi An means "peace meeting place".  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
4. The bridge was built by the Japanese in the 16<sup>th</sup> century with the unique and special structure.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_
5. Since 1998, the Hoi An resident decided to preserve using colored lanterns, one of the beautiful culture.  
=> \_\_\_\_\_

**2. Using the suggestions below and your own knowledge, write a short paragraph (6-10 sentences) to introduce about your hometown.**

Suggestions:

- Where is your hometown? What is your hometown like?
- What are specialties in your hometown?
- How are people in your hometown?
- Do you love your hometown? Why or why not?

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

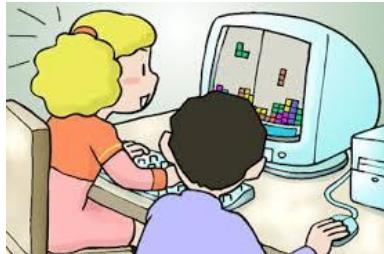
**E. SPEAKING**

**1. Answer some questions about yourself.**

1. What is your name? How old are you? Where are you from?
2. How many people are there in your family? What do you do?
3. What are your hobbies?
4. What do you often do in your free time?
5. What traditional festival in Vietnam do you like the most? Why?

**2. Find out the differences between two pictures by using comparison.**

1.	A cottage	A building
		

2.	<p>Listening to music</p> 	<p>Going camping</p> 
3.	<p>Children fly kites on fields</p> 	<p>Children play computer games in the room</p> 
4.	<p>Traffic in the countryside</p> 	<p>Traffic in cities</p> 
5.	<p>Tet in Ha Noi</p> 	<p>Tet in Ho Chi Minh City</p> 

## UNIT 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Read the following words and put them in the correct column.

stripe	pedestrian	straw	instructor	Sprout
spring	offspring	astronaut	stress	Spread
strike	strange	sprite	instruction	Stress
strong	sprinkle	stream	straight	Strive

/spr/	/str/
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

#### 2. Read the sentences aloud, underline the words contain cluster /strl and /spr/.

1. In spring, the sprinkle often takes place in the north of Vietnam.
2. Strawberry is often used to make cakes and beverages.
3. Vietnamese people strived for the freedom and independence in the past.
4. Now there are a lot of factories in the countryside where many streams used to be.
5. When women are stressed, they often eat a lot of food.
6. Fairytales are spread from generation to generation by the oral method.
7. When a stranger comes to your house, children are told not to allowed him/her to enter.
8. Everyone should do morning exercise to keep their body strong and healthy.
9. Westerners often ask for something straightforwardly while most Vietnamese people say around the bushes.
10. Sprouts grow strongly in spring.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR.

#### 1. Choose the correct answer to complete these sentences.

1. \_\_\_\_\_ is a day for students to express their love and esteem to their teachers.  
 A. Teacher's day      B. Children's day      C. Women's day
2. Vietnamese people always eat \_\_\_\_\_ at the Mid-Autumn festival.  
 A. Chung cakes      B. birthday cakes      C. moon cakes
3. Tet holiday is a special occasion for \_\_\_\_\_ especially people living far from hometown.  
 A. a family gathering      B. a family reunion  
 C. a family party
4. Children receive \_\_\_\_\_ from adults on the first days of Lunar New Year.  
 A. good money      B. new money      C. lucky money
5. In tradition, \_\_\_\_\_ often do household chores and take care of children while \_\_\_\_\_ go to work for earning money in Vietnam.  
 A. men/women      B. women/men      C. woman/man
6. Vietnamese people often live in \_\_\_\_\_ which normally consists of more than three generations in a roof.  
 A. an extended family    B. a nuclear family    C. a typical family
7. Giving gifts at Christmas is not \_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam.  
 A. a popular occasion    B. a good chance    C. an original tradition

8. \_\_\_\_\_ is a celebration to show respect and esteem to the elderly.  
**A. Longevity      B. Birthday      C. Wishing**
9. In Vietnam, a smile is like a silent \_\_\_\_\_ to reply when getting a praise.  
**A. "sorry"      B. "thank you"      C. "excuse"**
10. When meeting adults who are older than you, you should greet them by \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A. saying hello      B. bowing slightly      C. smile**

## 2. Match the pictures with the correct description.

1. 	a. Decorating and cleaning houses on Tet holiday	2. 	b. Taking your shoes off before going into a Japanese house
3. 	c. Living with parents	4. 	d. Getting and passing things with both hands
5. 	e. Going to pagoda to pray health and luck for the family	6. 	f. Eating areca nut and betel
7. 	g. Giving gifts at Christmas	8. 	h. Receiving "lucky money" from adults
9. 	i. Worshipping their ancestors to endure their good favour	10. 	k. holding knife on your right hand to cut the dish into pieces

**Your answers:**

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

**3. Write the correct form of the verbs.**

- Worshipping (take) \_\_\_\_\_ place regularly on particular days, such as festivals and the death day of the ancestor.
- "Banh Chung" (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a traditional and irreplaceable cake of Vietnamese people in the Tet Holidays.
- The convention of giving "li xi (have) \_\_\_\_\_ its roots in the folklore about the ogre called Tuy.
- Adults (give) \_\_\_\_\_ red lucky pockets to children as a token of luck and best wishes.
- South Koreans prefer (do) \_\_\_\_\_ business with people with whom they have a personal connection.
- Thais generally (use) \_\_\_\_\_ first rather than surnames, with the honorific title Khun before the name.
- Traditionally, children (live) \_\_\_\_\_ with their parents until marriage.
- The extended family (provide) \_\_\_\_\_ both emotional and financial support.
- The British (exchange) \_\_\_\_\_ gifts between family members and close friends for birthdays and Christmas.
- It is the custom for Polish (applaud) \_\_\_\_\_ when the plane (land) \_\_\_\_\_.

**4. Give the correct form of words in the brackets.**

- There is a \_\_\_\_\_ of giving presents at Christmas. (customary)
- It is \_\_\_\_\_ to celebrate the elders' birthday for longevity wishing. (custom)
- In America, fish and chips is a \_\_\_\_\_ dish. (tradition)
- There is a custom that children leave teeth under their pillow for the tooth fairy in many Western \_\_\_\_\_. (cultural)
- According to the tradition, wedding \_\_\_\_\_ can involve five parties in some parts of the Middle East. (celebrate)
- \_\_\_\_\_ children cover their tummy button when they hear thunder. (Japan)
- Customs and traditions of a country are \_\_\_\_\_ from those of others. (differ)
- Follow the tradition of giving gifts when being \_\_\_\_\_ to a house for meals, parties and celebrations. (invitation)

**5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of *have to* and *must*.**

- In the countryside, children \_\_\_\_\_ stay at home when the clock strikes 7 p.m.
- In the south of Vietnam, girls \_\_\_\_\_ wear Ao dai as a uniform.
- Before leaving the dining table, children \_\_\_\_\_ ask for permission.
- In India, people \_\_\_\_\_ use their right hand to eat.
- Shoes \_\_\_\_\_ always be removed before entering a Japanese home.
- You \_\_\_\_\_ drive on the left when living in Britain.
- To attend the Halloween party, you \_\_\_\_\_ wear fancy dress.
- Children \_\_\_\_\_ obey their parents to be good ones.

**6. Underline the mistake then rewrite the correct one.**

- When waiting to buy tickets, you shouldn't queue in a row.

---

2. There is a custom that Vietnamese teachers should to wear Ao dai at school.

- When coming to America, you shouldn't tip the waiter 10% of the bill.

4. You must to use the right hand when eating in India.

---

5. You mustn't drive on the left in Britain.

---

6. Young people have bow your head to greet adults in some Asian countries.

---

7. In the past, Vietnamese women hadn't to stay at home doing housework.

---

8. As a worker, he have to wear protective clothes.

---

### **7. Give suitable advice or obligations for the following situations.**

1. Your friend is invited to a Japanese house, but he doesn't know how to greet.

Your \_\_\_\_\_

2. You and your friend are invited to an American house for meal. You don't know how to use forks and knives.

You and your friend \_\_\_\_\_

3. John is visiting Vietnam next week, but he doesn't know what he should do when meeting old people.

He \_\_\_\_\_

4. Thu is travelling to India. After the plane lands, she goes to a restaurant for eating. She is served a tasty dish but they don't give her chopsticks or spoon.

Thu \_\_\_\_\_

5. You are at train station and you see the sign “no smoking”.

You \_\_\_\_\_

6. Mike is one of Mai's friends. Mai invites him to come to her house. What should he do?

He \_\_\_\_\_

### **C. SPEAKING**

**1. Talk about Vietnamese culture. Imagine you invite your foreign pen-friend to your house who don't know about Vietnamese culture. Tell him or her about some Vietnamese customs to help them have a good time at your house. Using the following suggestions.**

Visiting one's house or being a guest	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Bring some gifts when they invite you to their homes for a meal, celebration, or special occasion.</li> <li>- Take your shoes off before getting into the house.</li> <li>- Say hello and bow your head to adults.</li> </ul>
Talking to the elderly	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Join hands and bow your head to greet.</li> <li>- Address them by some special Vietnamese words: "Cụ", "Ông", "Bà" and add "Thưa" before these words.</li> <li>- Keep silent when they talk.</li> <li>- Take and give things with both hands.</li> </ul>
Eating with others	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Wait for the oldest person eating first.</li> <li>- Learn how to use chopsticks.</li> <li>- Try to finish everything on your plate.</li> </ul>
Giving gifts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Not open the gifts in the giver's presence</li> </ul>
Greeting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Join hands and bow slightly or shake hands between two people with the same sex.</li> </ul>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Use Mr. or Ms. or a title plus the first name to address people.</li> <li>- Not allow to hug or kiss</li> </ul>
--	--

## 2. Read the suggestions below and talk about Japanese culture by using **should** and **shouldn't**.

"The do and don't in Japan?"

Do	Don't
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Bow lower than the other person when the other person is older or has a higher social status to greet or thank.</li> <li>- Remove their shoes in the foyer before entering a Japanese house.</li> <li>- Be on time! Simply don't be late. This is considered blatantly disrespectful in Japan. Being excessively early is inappropriate, too. Aim to arrive 5-10 minutes before scheduled meeting time.</li> <li>- Learn about gift-giving (omiyage) rituals. Gift-giving is another long-standing and highly ritualized custom in Japan. Definitely take the time to research what kinds of gifts and presentation of gifts are appropriate for your business partners.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Open gifts in the givers presence.</li> <li>- Hold anything with chopsticks by two people at the same time, or passing an item from chopsticks to chopsticks.</li> <li>- Pour your own drink. It is customary in Japan for people to pour drinks for other people, usually with more junior people serving more senior people. It's important to pay attention and fill someone's glass before it gets empty.</li> <li>- Refer to a Japanese person by first name unless instructed to do so. Use last name + 'san' (but never use 'san' for yourself!). Use of Japanese first names is typically only for very familiar relations. Last name + 'san' demonstrates respect.</li> </ul>

## D. READING

### Longevity custom in Vietnam

Longevity wishing ceremony is to wish an elderly person longevity. That is a Vietnamese custom, when their grandparents or parents reach the old age, children show their profound gratitude to them by celebrating a ceremony to wish them good health and long life.

Showing respect and esteem for the elderly is a tradition that remains today. Nowadays, when grandparents or parents reach the ages of 70, 80 or 90, their children and grandchild organize ceremonies for longevity which are generally held on birthdays or during the spring days during Tet. The celebration day depends on each local: on the first lunar January or on 15 lunar January, commonly happens in early spring festival. Longevity ceremony is considered to be a traditional formal ceremony, featuring cultural background based on the fathers' customs.

Such celebrations are occasions to show devotion and respect to grandparents parents. Celebrations for longevity, either large or small, manifest the family's joy in having a relative who has been able to lead a long life. Today, in almost every village or urban district, there is an association of longevity for the elderly. When reaching the ages of 70 or 80, the old are offered red dresses and other gifts and are invited to be photographed.

## 1. Match the words in column A and the meaning in column B.

A	B
1. longevity	a. the feeling of being grateful and wanting to express your thanks
2. gratitude	b. a public or religious occasion that includes a series of formal or traditional actions
3. esteem	c. to show something clearly, especially a feeling, an attitude or a quality
4. ceremony	d. great love, care and support for somebody/something
5. devotion	e. the length or duration of life
6. to manifest	f. great respect and admiration; a good opinion of somebody

**Your answers:**

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
----	----	----	----	----	----

**2. Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1. What is the purpose of longevity custom in Vietnam?
- A. wish an elderly person longevity
  - B. show respect and esteem for the elderly
  - C. manifest the family's joy in having a relative
  - D. All above
2. When is the longevity wishing ceremony held?
- A. on the first lunar January
  - B. on 15 lunar January
  - C. the day depends on each local
  - D. in lunar January
3. When will grandparents or parents have their longevity celebration held?
- A. When they reach the ages of 70, 80 or 90
  - B. On their birthday
  - C. In early spring festival
  - D. During Tet
4. What do they do in the celebration?
- A. The old wear blue dresses, give gifts and take photos.
  - B. The old wear red dresses, receive other gifts and are photographed.
  - C. The old wear black dresses, receive gifts and take photos.
  - D. The old wear purple dresses, give gifts and are photographed.

**E. WRITING****1. Complete the following paragraph with the words in the box.**

celebration      happiness      important      disadvantaged  
 prosperous      shows

**Open New House Celebration Customs**

In the past, building a house was considered one of the three most (1)\_\_\_\_\_ events in Vietnamese life. These were purchasing a buffalo, looking for a wife, and building a house. So building an own house is very important to Vietnamese. It even (2)\_\_\_\_\_ his position in social structure. Vietnamese who die without ever has his own house is considered poor and (3)\_\_\_\_\_.

Open house (4)\_\_\_\_\_ is a popular customs of Vietnamese. All of friends, relatives and neighbors are invited to a party to share with the house owner (5)\_\_\_\_\_. After the party all guests give gifts normally a little money to house owner and also best wishes for health, happiness and a (6)\_\_\_\_\_ life.

**2. Read the table describing the difference between Vietnamese culture and American culture then fill in the table below.**

Table Manners in Vietnam	Table Manners in the USA
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Wait to be shown where to sit.</li> <li>- The oldest person should sit first.</li> <li>- Pass dishes with both hands.</li> <li>- The most common utensils are chopsticks and a flat spoon.</li> <li>- Chopsticks should be placed on the table or</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The fork is held in the right hand and is used for eating. The fork is held tines down. The knife is used to cut or spread something. To use the knife, the fork is switched to the left hand. To continue eating, the fork is switched back to the right hand.</li> <li>- If you have not finished eating, cross your knife and fork on</li> </ul>

<p>a chopstick rest after every few mouthfuls or when breaking to drink or speak.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- People hold bowls close to their faces.</li> <li>- Hold the spoon in your left hand while eating soup.</li> <li>- Meals are typically served family-style.</li> <li>- Try to finish everything on your plate.</li> <li>- When you are finished eating, rest your chopsticks on top of your rice bowl.</li> <li>- Cover your mouth when using a toothpick.</li> </ul>	<p>your plate with the fork over the knife. Indicate you have finished eating by laying your knife and fork parallel across the right side of your plate.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Feel free to refuse specific foods or drinks without offering an explanation.</li> <li>- Do not begin eating until the hostess starts or says to begin.</li> <li>- Remain standing until invited to sit down.</li> <li>- Do not rest your elbows on the table.</li> <li>- Put your napkin in your lap as soon as you sit down.</li> <li>- Leave a small amount of food on your plate when you have finished eating.</li> </ul>
---	---

### 3. Fill in the table below.

Comparison	Table Manners in Vietnam	Table Manners in the USA
Similarities	Eg: Sit down when invited .....	
Differences	- Using chopsticks and spoon .....	- Using forks and knives .....

### 4. Using these above ideas to describe the differences between Vietnamese and American table manners.

Your writing:

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

## UNIT 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

- |                      |                   |                    |                    |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> trike | B. <u>s</u> tripe | C. <u>s</u> prite  | D. <u>s</u> pring  |
| 2. A. <u>f</u> ood   | B. <u>b</u> ook   | C. <u>g</u> oods   | D. <u>c</u> ook    |
| 3. A. <u>c</u> ustom | B. <u>b</u> us    | C. <u>c</u> ushion | D. <u>c</u> ustard |
| 4. A. <u>p</u> uzzle | B. <u>p</u> izza  | C. <u>d</u> izzy   | D. <u>b</u> uzzer  |
| 5. A. <u>t</u> aboo  | B. <u>b</u> amboo | C. <u>c</u> andle  | D. <u>c</u> aptain |

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

- |                   |                |              |                 |
|-------------------|----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. invitation  | B. celebration | C. tradition | D. information  |
| 2. A. custom      | B. invite      | C. greeting  | D. manner       |
| 3. A. happen      | B. finish      | C. preserve  | D. practice     |
| 4. A. England     | B. Australia   | C. America   | D. Japan        |
| 5. A. interesting | B. surprising  | C. exciting  | D. embarrassing |

#### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

**1. Fill in the blank by using have to, must, should to complete the sentences.**

1. If a man marries a Scot woman, he \_\_\_\_\_ welcome her with eggs and sauces on her face.
2. When going to some African countries, you \_\_\_\_\_ touch hands to greet people.
3. In the northern part of Mozambique, people \_\_\_\_\_ greet their hands three times and say hello.
4. Living in the Central African Republic, you \_\_\_\_\_ slap their right hands together and grasp each other's middle finger if you see a good friend.
5. In La Tomatina, the participants \_\_\_\_\_ throw tomatoes to others purely for fun.
6. Meeting the native Maori people, you \_\_\_\_\_ rub your noses to theirs in a sign of trust and closeness.
7. It is the custom that children \_\_\_\_\_ ask the adults' permission before leaving the dining table.
8. My father says I \_\_\_\_\_ go home at 9 p.m.
9. You \_\_\_\_\_ drive on the left hand in London.
10. When eating in India, you \_\_\_\_\_ use the right hand.

**2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. I'm interested in learning more about the customs of other countries.  
 A. attractions      B. language      C. traditions      D. people
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ can be used to greet someone or to show agreement.  
 A. hug      B. nod      C. kiss      D. custom
3. Ken hurt his back after his deep \_\_\_\_\_ to the foreign visitor.  
 A. bow      B. shake      C. contact      D. effect
4. Getting down on your knees is a \_\_\_\_\_ to honor the dead in this country.  
 A. closeness      B. range      C. suggestion      D. ritual
5. In Scotland, the Scots welcome \_\_\_\_\_ with eggs and sauces on her face.  
 A. their bride      B. their female guest      C. their girlfriend      D. their baby
6. Peter is interested \_\_\_\_\_ traditions and customs over the world.  
 A. on      B. about      C. in      D. with
7. You \_\_\_\_\_ take their shoes off before entering a Japanese house.

- A. can                    B. have to                    C. may                    D. might
8. Remember, when you meet Mr. Robinson, he doesn't like any physical contact.  
 A. gossip                B. touching                C. greeting                D. discussion
9. We can say “\_\_\_\_\_” to greet people in Thailand.  
 A. sawaddee            B. serhaba                C. salaam                    D. samatha
10. John greeted his friend with a warm smile and firm handshake.  
 A. wished                B. invited                C. welcomed                D. offered
11. He \_\_\_\_\_ learn about Thai customs before leaving for there  
 A. have to                B. should                C. must                        D. may
12. The styles in his store \_\_\_\_\_ from old-fashioned to modern.  
 A. differ                B. accept                C. range                        D. come
13. In Greece, a child's tooth is thrown onto the roof for \_\_\_\_\_ luck.  
 A. bad                    B. ill                        C. X                            D. good
14. Greetings range \_\_\_\_\_ the common handshake \_\_\_\_\_ other strange rituals found some countries.  
 A. from/to                B. to/to                C. in/to                        D. from/in
15. La Tomatina is the \_\_\_\_\_ tomato fight in the world.  
 A. big                    B. bigger                C. biggest                      D. the biggest dialogue

### 3. Choose the correct answer for each below.

1. Fred: How was your trip to Japan?

Teresa: It was good, thanks. I had a bit of trouble with the bowing, though.

Fred: \_\_\_\_\_

Teresa: Well, I was never sure how deeply I should bow to other people.

A. Japanese people often bow as a form of greeting.

B. I'm good at bowing, too.

C. What was the problem you had?

D. Let me give you some advice about that.

2. Jasper: \_\_\_\_\_

Kendra: No, only certain people do that there. I believe the Maori people do that.

Jasper: Oh, thanks for telling me. I wouldn't want to do something embarrassing.

A. Do you know anything about greeting customs in New Zealand?

B. I was confused when someone in New Zealand pressed my nose.

C. Do you know of any unusual greeting customs around the world?

D. Is it customary for all New Zealanders to press noses together in greeting?

3. Erin: I'm going to Saudi Arabia. Do you know much about their customs?

Justin: I know that men sometimes kiss each other.

Erin: What about women? \_\_\_\_\_

Justin: No, men don't greet women with a kiss there.

A. Will someone I don't know try to kiss me, too?

B. Do women kiss one another as well?

C. Is it customary to shake hands?

D. Do many women visit Saudi Arabia?

4. Yolanda: I'm writing an essay about greetings around the world.

Aaron: \_\_\_\_\_

Yolanda: They certainly do. There is such a wide range of customs.

- A. That sounds like an interesting topic all right.  
 B. What a difficult topic for an essay!  
 C. They really differ from country to country.  
 D. Cultures can be very different from each other.
5. Clark: I can't wait until I go on my trip to Tibet!  
 Patty: Don't be mad if people stick out their tongue when they meet you.  
 Clark: \_\_\_\_\_  
 Patty: I'm not really sure, but it's a very old tradition.  
 A. Isn't that a strange custom?  
 B. Have you ever been to Tibet before?  
 C. Why do they show their tongues?  
 D. Are you sure they stick out their tongues?

**C. SPEAKING****1. Put the conversation in the correct order then practice with your partners.**

**Sam is visiting her friend, Peter, who lives in Belgium. Earlier, Peter introduced Sam to a friend of his.**

- A. Peter:** Relax, Sam, this is Belgium. It's customary for people to do that here.  
**B. Peter:** Not only in Belgium but also in France. It is also the custom of kissing each other on the cheeks.  
**C. Sam:** Oh, really? I'll keep that in mind.  
**D. Sam:** Usually, yes. People sometimes do hug or kiss once on the cheek. However, they only do that if they are good friends.  
**E. Sam:** I'm pretty upset! I can't believe what just happened.  
**F. Peter:** I know. In the United States, people usually just shake hands or nod to each other, right?  
**G. Sam:** I didn't know that. I'm not used to that much physical contact when meeting people.  
**H. Peter:** Are you mad because that guy just kissed you on the cheek?  
**I. Sam:** I see. Just a little bit embarrassed.  
**J. Peter:** When in Rome, do as the Roman do. So you should get used to it.  
**K. Sam:** Yes! He kissed me not just once, but three times. And this is the first time I've met him.

**Your answers:**

1. E	2.	3.	4.	5.	
6.	7.	8.	9.	10.	11.

**2. Work in pairs.**

**Tell your partner about a custom in greeting in Vietnam or in other countries all over the world that you know or hear about from the others.**

**Your talk should include the following information:**

- What is the way of greeting?
- In which country they do that for greeting?
- How do they greet?
- Does that way of greeting have any meanings or what do they want to express when greeting like that?
- What do you think about that way of greeting.

**D. READING**

A Vietnamese wedding consists of several ceremonies including asking permission to receive the bride, the procession to receive the bride, the procession emission to the groom's house, the second ancestor ceremony, and the banquet party.

In the morning, the groom's mother and a few close relatives would walk to the bride's house with a gift of betel to ask permission to receive the bride at her house. This ceremony was often done in the times of arranged marriages to insure that the bride had not fled from the home and that the wedding was still taking place.

In the procession to receive the bride, the groom and his family often carry decorated lacquer boxes covered in red cloth to represent his wealth and which include various gifts for the bride's family. There are either 6 or 8 boxes, but never 7 because it is bad luck.

After paying their respects to their ancestors, the bride and groom will serve tea to their parents who will then give them advice regarding marriage and family. During the candle ceremony, the bride and groom's families union is celebrated and the mother in law of the bride will open the boxes filled with jewelry and dress her new daughter in law in the jewelry.

Finally, the groom officially asks for permission to take his new bride home and they make their way back to his house. During the banquet there is usually a 7-10 course meal and the bride and groom make their rounds to each table to express their gratitude and collect their gifts.

During this time, the bride usually wears three outfits, one modern western wedding gown, another western dress, and finally a traditional ao dai.

## 1. Read three first paragraphs of the passage and choose the correct answers.

1. What is the best title for the passage?
  - A. Things to do in a Vietnamese wedding
  - B. How to organize a wedding
  - C. Traditions and customs in a Vietnamese wedding
2. According to the passage, how many ceremonies does a Vietnamese wedding include?
  - A. 4
  - B. 5
  - C. 6
3. What do the groom's family bring to ask permission to receive the bride?
  - A. trays of betel
  - B. bags of gifts
  - C. boxes of candies and cakes
4. Why was the ceremony of asking to receive the bride done?
  - A. to make sure that the bride had not fled from the home
  - B. to insure that the wedding was still taking place.
  - C. Both A and B
5. How many lacquer boxes considered as a bad luck?
  - A. 7
  - B. 8
  - C. 13
6. What is the purpose of carrying decorated lacquer boxes covered in red cloth?
  - A. To receive the bride
  - B. To wish luck
  - C. To represent the groom's wealth

## 2. Read the rest of the passage and choose the correct answer.

1. After being served with tea, their parents give them advice regarding marriage and family.
  - A. True
  - B. False
2. During the candle ceremony, the bride's mother will open the boxes filled with jewelry.
  - A. True
  - B. False
3. During the banquet, there is a only 7-course meal.
  - A. True
  - B. False
4. To show their gratitude and collect their gifts, the bride and groom go around to each table.

- A. True                              B. False
5. During the wedding, the bride usually wears four outfits.
- A. True                              B. False

### 3. Read the article then answer the questions.

#### The gift of lucky money

Many traditional customs are practiced in the Lunar New Year, the most special and important occasion in Vietnam, like honoring ancestors' spirits, visiting close relatives on the first day of the Lunar New Year, exchanging New Year wishes with relative, neighbors and friends, and especially giving lixi, or lucky money, to children and elders.

This custom is a way of wishing good luck for both children and senior people during Tet. It is also a symbol of good health, success, and happiness. Local people wake up early on the first day of the Lunar New Year, put on their best clothes and the entire family, usually multi-generational, gathers in the living room to welcome the Lunar New Year. Children will respectfully fold their arms in front of their chests, and, facing their parents as well as grandparents, give them the best wishes for a "Happy New Year" or "good health and longevity". The adults, in return, give them "li xi" and extend their wishes to the children for "eating well and growing up healthy," and "happiness and prosperity" for all family members. Guests give children "li xi" as well

This custom has been practiced and preserved for years with the purpose of welcoming a new year with luck, health and success. They, the givers or the takers, are both happy to receive best regards from each other, which makes the Lunar New Year more exciting and significant to everyone.

1. Who will receive "li xi" on the Lunar New Year?

---

2. What do they practice this custom for?

---

3. What will children do on the first day of a New Year?

---

4. In turn, what will their parents do after receiving their children's wishes?

---

5. Do the guests who visit others' houses give "lixi" to children?

---

6. What is another name of "li xi"?

---

### E. WRITING

#### 1. Fill in the Blanks

cheek        customs        stick out        greeting        range of

When traveling to another country, you should learn a bit about its (1)\_\_\_\_\_ before you go there. This includes getting to know the proper form of (2)\_\_\_\_ people, which can differ a lot. If you go to a European country, don't be surprised if someone kisses you on the (3)\_\_\_\_\_. In China, for example, people might applaud when a visitor is introduced. Finally, if you travel to Tibet, people may (4)\_\_\_\_\_ their tongues to greet you! Indeed, there is a wide (5)\_\_\_\_\_ greetings around the world.

#### 2. Read the information below then write about the most impressive way of greeting to you.

## GREETINGS FROM AROUND THE WORLD

### India

The "namaste". Place your hands in a praying position at the chest and bow slightly.

### United States

Shake hands firmly and make direct eye contact.

### Thailand

The "wai". Like the Indian "namaste", place your hands in a praying position at your chest and bow slightly. The higher your hands on your chest, the greater respect you are showing the other person, but don't put your hands above your head as it may be misconstrued as an insult.

### Turkey

Clasp both hands in a handshake and hug on both sides while saying, "merhaba" ("greeting"). (This gesture is generally performed among old friends of the same sex.)

### Belgium

Three kisses, going from cheek to cheek.

### Tibet

Some Tibetan tribes people: Stick out your tongue at the other person.

### Japan

Bow from the waist to a 15 degree angle. This is an informal bow used for all ranks and occasions.

### Latin America

Hug (called an "abrazo") and give a few hearty claps on the back.

### New Zealand

Maori tribes people in New Zealand rub noses to greet each other.

### Your writing:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM

### A. PHONETICS

1. Complete the words below the pictures with -ian or -ion then mark the stress syllable in each word. Read the words aloud.

 1. music _____	 2. act _____	 3. electric _____
 4. direct _____	 5. librар _____	 6. stat _____
 7. caut _____	 8. physic _____	 9. magic _____

2. Use the above words to complete the following sentences. Then read them aloud.

- \_\_\_\_\_ is known as a professional person trained in library science and engage in library services.
- I felt so tired yesterday so I went to see my \_\_\_\_\_.
- Most people know that the \_\_\_\_\_ of acid is extremely detrimental and dangerous.
- I couldn't follow the \_\_\_\_\_ of his thoughts.
- I have a long wait at the \_\_\_\_\_.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who installs or repairs electrical or telephone lines.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who performs magic tricks to amuse an audience.
- He exercised \_\_\_\_\_ in opening the door.
- \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who composes or conducts music as a profession.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

1. Odd one out.

- |                      |              |                 |                |
|----------------------|--------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. celebration    | B. festival  | C. book         | D. holiday     |
| 2. A. meeting        | B. seeing    | C. visiting     | D. reunion     |
| 3. A. worship        | B. remember  | C. celebrate    | D. remind      |
| 4. A. ancestor       | B. father    | C. mother       | D. sister      |
| 5. A. boiled chicken | B. spaghetti | C. spring rolls | D. sticky rice |

**2. Complete the table with appropriate verbs and nouns.**

Verbs	Nouns
1.	Performance
Reunite	2.
Celebrate	3.
4.	Preservation
5.	Procession
sing	6.
7.	Commemoration
8.	Worship
9.	Organization
act	10.

**3. Complete the sentences with the following words.**

<i>biggest</i>	<i>world</i>	<i>moon cakes</i>	<i>celebration</i>	<i>ancestors</i>
<i>money</i>	<i>made</i>	<i>traditional</i>	<i>reunion</i>	<i>local</i>

- The \_\_\_\_\_ of 1000 years of Thang Long was strongly impressive.
- Quan ho* singing has been recognized as a \_\_\_\_\_ heritage.
- In Vietnam, Tet is known as an occasion for family \_\_\_\_\_.
- The \_\_\_\_\_ people often perform a welcome dance when having visitors at the Cham Tower.
- Vietnamese people often show their respect to their \_\_\_\_\_.
- Tet is the \_\_\_\_\_ festival in Vietnam.
- Banh chung* is \_\_\_\_\_ of sticky rice, pork, green beans, and wrapped in green leaves.
- Spring roll is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ foods in Vietnam.
- At Mid-Autumn Festival, children can dance, sing and enjoy \_\_\_\_\_.
- Children often receive lucky \_\_\_\_\_ during the first days of Tet.

**4. Choose the best answer A, B, C, D to complete the sentences.**

- Pizza is a traditional \_\_\_\_\_ dish.  
 A. Italian                  B. Italia                  C. Italis                  D. Italion
- Glastonbury Festival is a \_\_\_\_\_ festival in England.  
 A. modern                  B. famous                  C. family                  D. famulus
- The Toronto International Film Festival is a film festival \_\_\_\_\_ each September in Toronto, Ontario, Canada.  
 A. held                  B. hold                  C. perform                  D. shown
- Festival has gathered millions of people from around the world each year.  
 A. attract                  B. held                  C. gathered                  D. collect
- Vu Lan Festival is an occasion for showing \_\_\_\_\_ to parents, ancestors.  
 A. reunion                  B. soul                  C. mind                  D. gratitude

6. On festival days, there are many people coming to \_\_\_\_\_ land to find the belief, wishing for luck and fortune.  
 A. Buddhist      B. Buddhism      C. Buddha      D. Buddhistic
7. The Yen Tu festival is organized since the 10<sup>th</sup> lunar month and \_\_\_\_\_ for three spring months.  
 A. occurred      B. happened      C. longed      D. lasted
8. According to the M'Nong's custom, the New Rice \_\_\_\_\_ is usually held in the evening.  
 A. occasion      B. ceremony      C. holiday      D. vacation

**5. Choose the best answer A, B, C, D to complete the sentences.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of troubles of the past year, people tend to forget them and hope for a better upcoming year.  
 A. although      B. despite      C. even though      D. because
2. Tet holiday is for people to visit their relatives and join festivals, \_\_\_\_\_ everybody needs to well dress.  
 A. therefore      B. if      C. because      D. when
3. Most children love Tet \_\_\_\_\_ they can also receive lucky money.  
 A. moreover      B. while      C. because      D. therefore
4. Tet is a long holiday. \_\_\_\_\_, it is the largest festival in Vietnam.  
 A. therefore      B. moreover      C. while      D. if
5. Long couldn't buy ticket. \_\_\_\_\_, he cannot return home for Tet.  
 A. so      B. because      C. therefore      D. if
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Spring comes, it's also time to celebrate many festivals.  
 A. while      B. when      C. because      D. although
7. We celebrate our traditional festival each year, \_\_\_\_\_ it's very costly.  
 A. although      B. despite      C. in spite of      D. therefore
8. I was very lucky to participate in the White Nights \_\_\_\_\_ I was in Russia.  
 A. when      B. if      C. moreover      D. therefore
9. \_\_\_\_\_ Mai has been living 10 km away from Huong Pagoda, she has never been to Huong Pagoda Festival.  
 A. in spite of      B. despite of      C. although      D. despite
10. \_\_\_\_\_ the romantic beauty of the land with mountain inside the city, Da Nang attracts a great number of tourists each year.  
 A. although      B. if      C. thanks to      D. because

**6. Fill each blank with an appropriate word or phrase in the box.**

**a) Passage A**

ancient      landscapes      choose  
 terraced      ethnic      along

Many visitors (1)\_\_\_\_\_ to visit the stone plateau of Ha Giang. There are many beautiful and amazing (2)\_\_\_\_ with the zigzag mountainous path (3)\_\_\_\_\_ the edges of mountains, the (4)\_\_\_\_ mountainous town beside the market of the people in (5)\_\_\_\_\_ group in the cloud and fog. Ha Giang is also beautiful for plum and peach flowers blossom as well as the colorful (6)\_\_\_\_ field.

**b) Passage B**

destination      island      animals  
 known      of      beach

Phu Quoc is newly (1)\_\_\_\_\_ as the biggest tourism (2)\_\_\_\_\_ in Vietnam with the peaceful white sand (3)\_\_\_\_\_ from North to South along with the 99 mountains and hills and plentiful plants and (4)\_\_\_\_\_. Being compared to the sunshine heaven, Phu Quoc is always the perfect (5)\_\_\_\_\_ for the people who love discovering and experiencing the dreaming beauty (6)\_\_\_\_\_ the nature.

### 7. Connect each pair of sentences with an appropriate conjunctive adverb in the box to make compound sentences.

however      therefore      moreover      because      although      when

1. The tickets are very expensive. There are many people buying the tickets.

---

2. Tet is the greatest festival in Vietnam. Vietnamese people love Tet.

---

3. Children wear their new clothes on the first days of Tet. They can also receive lucky money.

---

4. Children like Mid-Autumn Festival very much. They can sing, dance, and eat moon cakes.

---

5. She isn't a Buddhist. She eats as a vegetarian.

---

6. She wants to enjoy the Tomatoes Festival in Spain. She is at the age of 20.

---

### C. SPEAKING

#### 1. Match the questions with the suitable answers.

1. where	a. the 8 <sup>th</sup> and 9 <sup>th</sup> day of the fourth lunar month
2. what performances	b. in Phu Dong village
3. how often	c. To worship Saint Giong, express patriotism and pray for happiness and a year of good fortune
4. when	d. folk games and traditional singing performances
5. what for	e. annually

Your answers:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
----	----	----	----	----

#### 2. Reorder to make a conversation about the festival mentioned on task 1.

A. Of course? That great. When does this festival celebrate?

B. Coming to this festival, visitors can enjoy many folk games and traditional singing performances. Besides, you can watch the dance's movement along with the sound of drums and gongs.

C. It's on the 8<sup>th</sup> and 9<sup>th</sup> day of the fourth lunar month each year. Its aim is to worship Saint Giong, express patriotism and to pray for happiness and a year of good fortune.

D. It's great.

E. Hey, Phong. Are you free on this weekend? Would you like to enjoy Giong Festival in Phu Dong village with me?

F. Is there any special activity in Giong Festival?

Your answers:

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
----	----	----	----	----

**D. READING****1. Read the text and answer the questions.****Vu Lan Festival**

Being the second largest annual traditional festival of Vietnam right after Tet Holiday, Vu Lan is widely celebrated throughout the country - among businesses, families, and other institutions. This festival takes place on the 15<sup>th</sup> day of the seventh month in Lunar Calendar.

The festival is originated from a legend. A Buddha's disciple named Muc Kien Lien saw that his mother was suffering from hell's tortures. Following Buddha's advice, on the seventh full moon of the year, Muc Kien Lien gathered monks and devotees and pray with them for his mother's relieve. Hence, this festival is to express gratitude and appreciation towards ones parents (especially mothers) and also help ancestors' lost souls find their way back to earth.

On this day, people visit pagodas and temples to worship ghosts and hungry spirits through offering food, clothes and other items, and releasing animals like birds or fish. Apart from that, they give presents and flowers to their parents to show their appreciation and gratitude.

**Questions**

1. What is the topic of the above text?

---

2. What is considered as the second largest annual traditional festival of Vietnam right after Tet Holiday?

---

3. When does Vu Lan Festival take place?

---

4. What did Buddha's disciple named Muc Kien Lien see?

---

5. Following Buddha's advice, what did Muc Kien Lien do on the seventh full moon the year?

---

6. Is this festival to express gratitude and appreciation towards ones' parents (especially mothers)?

---

7. How does this festival help ancestors' lost souls?

---

8. Where do people often visit on Vu Lan Festival?

---

9. To worship ghosts and hungry spirits, what do people often do?

---

10. To whom do they give presents and flowers to show their appreciation and gratitude?

---


**2. Read the text and answer the following questions.****Yen Tu Festival**

The Yen Tu festival is organized since the 10<sup>th</sup> lunar month and lasted for three spring months. After ceremonies are held in the base of the mountain, there are thousands of people to Dong pagoda built on the peak of Yen Tu. The way to Yen Tu peak is tortuous curling under the ancient trees, through the forest of bamboo, etc.

With the average time of 3 hours climbing, people will come to Dong pagoda. Coming to the Dong pagoda, people would feel relief like coming to the magical land.

There are many pagodas, towers, etc. on the way to the Yen Tu peak. They are hidden under the ancient trees, or right in the clear part of the space, in the cloud like the fairy tale. Moreover, when coming to Yen Tu, visitors feel like coming to the Heaven's gate to raise the cloud. The East side is Ha Long Bay with thousands of islet like the chain of pearl. The South part is Haiphong city with the Da Bach, Bach Dang Rivers like the silks. The West part is the rich delta of Hai Duong province, Bac Ninh province. And the North part is full of mountains. All could encourage a pride and excitement in the happiness of the conqueror.

On festival days, there are many people coming to the Buddhist land to find belief, and wish for luck and fortune. Somebody come to show the respect for the ancestor or just come to witness the beauty and peaceful atmosphere. Many oversea Vietnamese come to Yen Tu to find the humanity values. There are also many foreign visitors knowing Yen Tu to be the religious, historical and ecological destination of tourism.

### Questions

1. What is the topic of the above text?  
 A. Dong pagoda      B. Yen Tu peak      C. Buddhist land      D. Yen Tu festival
2. When is the Yen Tu festival celebrated? (on Lunar calendar)  
 A. January      B. August      C. September      D. October
3. Where do people go after participating in ceremonies held in the base of the mountain?  
 A. Dong pagoda      B. Dong temple      C. mountain      D. Yen Tu pagoda
4. How long do people spend climbing to Dong pagoda on average?  
 A. 1 hour      B. 1 hour a haft      C. 2 hours      D. 3 hours
5. What will you can see on the way to the Yen Tu peak?  
 A. pagoda      B. towers      C. A&B      D. nothing
6. What is on the East side of the Yen Tu peak?  
 A. Hai Phong      B. Ha Long Bay      C. Hai Duong      D. Bac Ninh
7. What is on the North part of the Yen Tu peak?  
 A. mountains      B. thousands of islet      C. silks      D. Bach Dang river
8. What do people often do on festival days?  
 A. find the belief      B. wish for luck      C. wish for fortune      D. All are true

### 3. Read the text again and answer the questions.

1. How long does the Yen Tu festival often last?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. What does the word "they" on line 7 replace for?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. What can be encouraged in the happiness of the conqueror when he comes to the Yen Tu peak?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. What do many oversea Vietnamese do when coming to Yen Tu?  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. What is Yen Tu considered by many foreign visitors?  
 \_\_\_\_\_

### E. WRITING

#### 1. Rewrite the sentences by using the words given.

Besides	1. Vietnamese people often clean out their homes before the New Year. They hope to get rid of the past year's bad luck. _____ _____
---------	---

<b>However</b>	2. To be lucky in the New Year, people often buy new clothes. They get a fresh haircut. _____
<b>Because</b>	3. We spend about four days to prepare for Tet. We think we need more time. _____
<b>Although</b>	4. Mai feels strongly excited about the amazing atmosphere on the festival. She sometimes feels it too noisy. _____
<b>Although</b>	5. Nga is cleaning her house. Her mother is preparing some traditional foods. _____

**2. Reorder the sentences.**

1. meet/ most/ to/ families/ gifts/ exchange/ have/ traditional/ and/ a/ meal.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. homes/ decorated/ are/ apricot/ with/ peach/ blossom/, / ,and/ blossom/ kumquat.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. not/ children/ are/ fight/ encouraged/ during/ to/ or/ cry/ Tet.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. many/ new year's tree/ families/ front/ plant/ a/ house/ in/ of/ the.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. after/ meal,/ the/ the/ family/ people/ many/ local/ Vietnamese/ pagoda/ attend/ ancestors/ to/ worship.  
\_\_\_\_\_
6. Glastonbury/ the/ an/ is/ Festival/ exciting/ festival/ music.  
\_\_\_\_\_
7. hope/ Vietnamese/ people/ that/ person/ the/ first/ to/ enter/ their/ generous/ house/ is/ a/ kind-hearted/ and.  
\_\_\_\_\_
8. festival/ people/ before/ a/, /prepare/ to/ their/ decorate/ house/ flowers/ with/ colorful.  
\_\_\_\_\_

# UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

- 1.** Complete the following box, then mark the stressed syllable for all words.

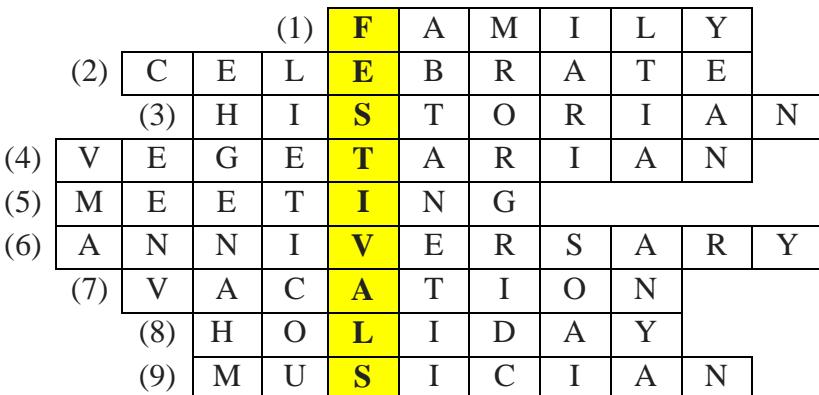
No	Verb	Noun
1	demonstrate	
2		extract
3		location
4	participate	
5	organize	

- 2.** Choose the word whose main stress is placed differently from the others.

- |                  |                |                |                |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. council    | B. award       | C. caro        | D. mushroom    |
| 2. A. design     | B. custom      | C. plumber     | D. jumble      |
| 3. A. christmas  | B. jolly       | C. compete     | D. teammate    |
| 4. A. professor  | B. separate    | C. marigold    | D. pomegranate |
| 5. A. unsuitable | B. traditional | C. competition | D. participate |

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

- 1.** Solve the crossword puzzle.



1. A primary social group living together usually includes parents and children
2. The verb of the word "celebration"
3. A person who is an authority on history and who studies it and writes about it
4. A person who eats no meat or fish or (often) any animal products
5. A formally arranged gathering
6. The day of remembrance, the date on which an event occurred in some previous year
7. Leisure time away from work; devoted to rest or pleasure, synonym of "holiday"
8. Leisure time away from work; devoted to rest or pleasure, synonym of "vacation"
9. Someone who plays a musical instrument (as a profession), composes or conducts music as a profession

- 2.** Fill each blank with an appropriate word or phrase in the box.

#### Passage 1

ancient      romantic      besides      experience      for      chance

The (1)\_\_\_\_\_ beauty of the land with mountain inside the city, city inside the sea, Da Nang is attractive (2)\_\_\_\_\_ the unique features. Coming to Da Nang, visitors could (3)\_\_\_\_\_ the peaceful sea, the natural forest and the pure atmosphere. (4)\_\_\_\_\_, the land of landscape also gives you: Ngu Hanh Son (Marble mountains), Son Tra peninsula, Ba Na hill, etc. Visitors often combine the journey to come to (5)\_\_\_\_\_ town of Hoi An when they have (6)\_\_\_\_\_ to be here.

## Passage 2

attracts      natural      bays      there      islands      with

Being one of the 29 most beautiful (1)\_\_\_\_\_ in the world, Nha Trang (2)\_\_\_\_\_ the tourists with blue water and white sand beach all year round. (3)\_\_\_\_\_ is nice climate with sunlight over the year. Nha Trang is the (4)\_\_\_\_\_ complex (5)\_\_\_\_\_ mountains, rivers, sea, and other landscapes like Hon Chong, Bai Tru, and (6)\_\_\_\_\_ of Hon Tre, Bich Dam, Hon Mun, Hon Tam, etc..

### 3. Choose the correct answers.

1. In major cities, such as Ho Chi Minh and Hanoi, Tet celebrations are \_\_\_\_\_ to new year celebrations in western countries.  
 A. similar      B. similarity      C. similarier      D. simile
2. Stores and neighborhoods \_\_\_\_\_ with colored lights and red banners.  
 A. delivery      B. decorate      C. hang      D. make
3. The Vietnamese believe that \_\_\_\_\_ a person does on New Year's Day dictates the course of the rest of the year.  
 A. why      B. when      C. where      D. what
4. Eating \_\_\_\_\_ represents the hope that no one will go hungry in the coming year.  
 A. a lot      B. a few      C. little      D. a little
5. In the days leading up to the holiday, the Vietnamese \_\_\_\_\_ give gifts of food to family members and friends.  
 A. traditionally      B. traditional      C. tradition      D. tradate
6. Families leave a \_\_\_\_\_ fruit tray at the altar.  
 A. three      B. four      C. five      D. six
7. The Vietnamese \_\_\_\_\_ cleaning the house at the first day of Tet.  
 A. encourage      B. avoid      C. discourage      D. get used to
8. Children are very \_\_\_\_\_ when receiving lucky money.  
 A. bored      B. pleasure      C. pleasant      D. unpleasant
9. Tet marks the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Lunar New Year, which is also celebrated in China as well.  
 A. ending      B. beginning      C. end      D. start up
10. The other holidays often last three days, \_\_\_\_\_ Tet continues for at least the first week of the New Year.  
 A. but      B. although      C. because      D. due to

## C. SPEAKING

### 1. Reorder to make a conversation about Tet.

- A. Nhung:** A little bit different. We often hold at the beginning of January in Lunar calendar.
- B. Nhung:** Yes, of course. We are often busy to clean decorate our house to make it look beautiful. Besides we also purchase some special flowers such as apricot and peach blossoms, kumquat trees, etc.
- C. MC:** Welcome to the famous show "Culture and Tradition". Man thanks for your attendance to tell us about Tet, the most prominent festival in Vietnam today, Nhung.
- D. Nhung:** I'm also pleasant to share with you! Goodbye, everybody!

- E. MC:** Do you often take a trip during Tet?
- F. MC:** When do the Vietnamese celebrate Tet? Is there any differences comparing to other countries?
- G. MC:** Do the Vietnamese prepare some special things for Tet? I mean there is any typical food or flower in Tet?
- H. MC:** That sounds great Thanks again Nhung for telling us about Tet in Vietnam. It comes to the end of our program today. Goodbye!
- I. Nhung:** Hi everybody. I'm very happy to be here and talk about our New Festival, Tet.
- J. Nhung:** No, I don't because the Vietnamese believe that Tet is the time for family reunion. Therefore, we just stay at home with family members and visit our relatives and friends.

**Your answers:**

1. C	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10. D
------	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-------

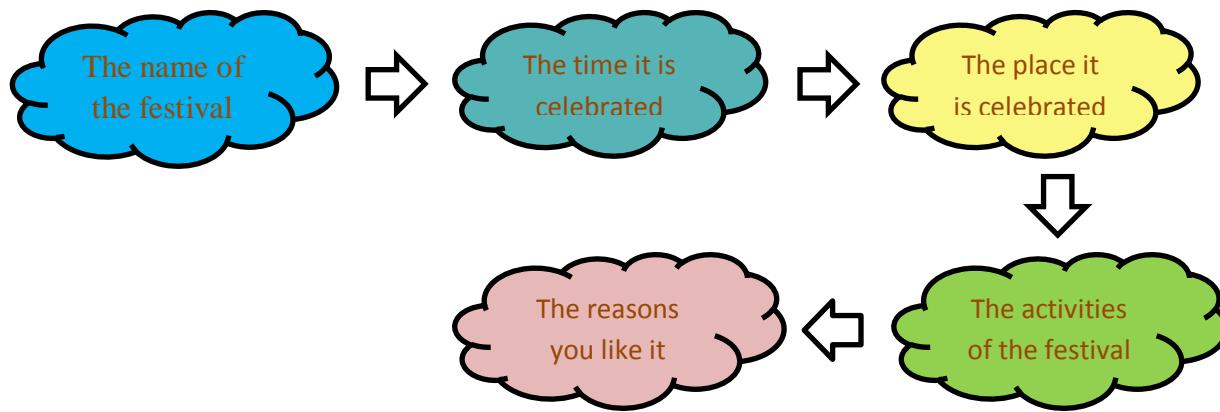
**2. Work in pair. Talk which one(s) you will and will not do this New Year.**

**Ex:** Dress new clothing

→ I will dress my new clothing

1. Wrap *Chung cake*
2. Dress beautifully
3. Visit your aunt
4. Watch fireworks when the clock strikes midnight
5. Get lucky money
6. Give your sister a handmade bag as a present
7. Get up early
8. Say wishes

**3. Work in pairs. Tell your partner about your favorite festival. Your task should include the following information.**



**D. READING****Shortcomings of Festivals**

Although there are many interesting things people can get from the festivals, there are also some disadvantages.

The first thing is that it is normally very costly to celebrate a festival. Due to the fact that most festivals aim to preserve and develop the traditional cultural heritages, the government is willing to spend a lot of money on this occasion. Besides, during the festival, most people do not work and only spend money on preparing food and buying expensive gifts for their relatives and friends. That's also a reason why it is said that a festival is often costly.

The second disadvantage is unsafe during a festival. It is estimated that there are hundred accidents during a festival, particularly road accidents. There are many dangerous festivals like cow-racing, elephant racing which may be very dangerous for people, especially for children. Moreover, in some festivals, when rushing to join the events, people may also cause other people to get hurt.

The last disadvantage is festivals may affect the environment seriously. People tend to throw away waste cans or bottles after a festival. Furthermore, trees along the roadsides may be damaged by the participants. Noise pollution is result from the noise of the performances and the noise from the crowds.

**1. Answer the following questions.**

1. How many disadvantages are there in the above passage?

---

2. What is the purpose of most festivals?

---

3. Do people often work during a festival?

---

4. Is there any accident during a festival?

---

5. Is cow-racing considered to be safe?

---

**2. Read the text again and choose the correct answers.**

1. It is cheap to hold a festival.  
A. True                              B. False
2. The government is willing to take a lot of money to celebrate a festival.  
A. True                              B. False
3. During a festival, people often prepare food and buy expensive gifts for strange people.  
A. True                              B. False
4. People may be hurt when they participate in a festival.  
A. True                              B. False
5. Environment is seriously affected by a festival.  
A. True                              B. False
6. A festival may cause noise pollution.  
A. True                              B. False

**3. Choose the correct answers to complete the following letter. The number 0 has been done for you.**

Dear Thanh,

I'm \_\_\_\_\_ to invite you to a party we are having at the flat next Friday, December 14<sup>th</sup>. As you know, it's Mai's 13<sup>th</sup> birthday next week and my birthday next month, (1)\_\_\_\_\_ we thought we'd celebrate together and have a joint party.

I can't remember if you know my address or not, but anyway, if you (2)\_\_\_\_\_ the directions below, you shouldn't get lost.

Take the Number 15 bus from the station and (3)\_\_\_\_\_ at the Star Hotel. Walk down Long Viet Road, past the Dan Chu Cinema, and then take the first turning on the right. That's Le Loi Road. Turn left at the first junction, then go straight past the church as (4)\_\_\_\_\_ as the next crossroads (5)\_\_\_\_\_ and our block of flats is the second on the right.

Do try and come. Of course you're welcome to bring someone with you if you want to.

Look forward to you then!

Love,

Nga

- |                  |             |              |               |
|------------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| 0. A. writing    | B. write    | C. writes    | D. to write   |
| 1. A. too        | B. but      | C. because   | D. so         |
| 2. A. to follow  | B. follow   | C. following | D. follows    |
| 3. A. get up     | B. get by   | C. get on    | D. get off    |
| 4. A. long       | B. well     | C. far       | D. soon.      |
| 5. A. right turn | B. to right | C. to turn   | D. turn right |

**4. Read the letter again and choose the correct answers.**

1. They are having a party at the flat next Sunday.  
 A. True    B. False
2. It's Mai's 14<sup>th</sup> birthday next week.  
 A. True    B. False
3. Mai and Thanh'd celebrate together and have a joint party.  
 A. True    B. False
4. To come to the party, Thanh will take the number 15 bus from the station.  
 A. True    B. False
5. According to the direction, after turning right the next crossroad, their blocker flats is the second on the right.  
 A. True    B. False

**E. WRITING****1. Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences.**

1. marks/ Hungry Festival/ a/ celebration/ great/ time/ of/ superstition/, /and/ for/ living/ the/ dead/ and/ the.  


---
2. The/ believe/ also/ Chinese/ that/ spirits/ purgatory /stuck/ in/ during/ are/ this/ released/ time.  


---
3. preparations/ nearly/ Hungry Ghost Festival/ before/ begin/ the/ a/ week/ the/ onset/ festival/ of.  


---
4. laundry/ Chinese/ hanging/ residents/ avoid/ and/ leaving/ outdoors/ outside/ anything.  


---

5. On/ the/ the/ festival/ 30th night/ of/, the/ the Chinese/ ghosts/ believe/ have/ their fill/ had/ the underworld/ and/ to/ return.
- 

## 2. Combine two sentences.

1. The bus arrived. We were talking. (when)

---

2. We missed the bus. We were so late. (because)

---

3. The hare was sleeping. The tortoise was running. (while)

---

4. Tam worked very hard. Her stepmother wasn't satisfied. (although)

---

5. The festival costs too much money. We won't celebrate the festival. (if)

---

## 3. Make questions for the bold words.

Ex: 0. **Moon cake** is a typical cake in Mid-Autumn Festival.

→ What is a typical cake in Mid-Autumn Festival?

1. **Mid-Autumn Festival** is known as a festival for children. \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  2. The Mid-Autumn festival is celebrated on the 15<sup>th</sup> day on the 8<sup>th</sup> lunar month. \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  3. Traffic jam often happens here **because** there are so many vehicles on the street at rush hour and the road is so narrow. \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  4. Yen Tu Festival is so **fantastic and meaningful**. \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  5. New-rice Festival is often held in Vietnam **annually**. \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  6. People often organize Hoa Ban Festival **in Spring**. \_\_\_\_\_ ?
-

## UNIT 6: FOLK TALES

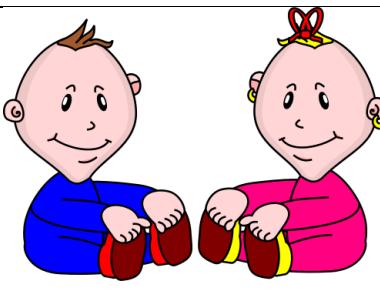
### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Practice saying these sentences aloud. Pay attention to the intonation.

Example: *What a nice dress she is wearing!*

1. What a beautiful flower!
2. How beautiful she is!
3. What a brave prince he is!
4. How warm the weather is!
5. What a hard-working woodcutter!
6. What cruel witches they are!

#### 2. Write an exclamation under the picture then say them aloud.

<p>Example: kind/ emperor What a kind emperor!</p>		
 <p>1. cute/ babies</p>	 <p>2. luxury/ car4</p>	 <p>3. interesting/ film</p>
 <p>4. slow/ tortoise</p>	 <p>5. cruel/ stepmother</p>	 <p>6. greedy/ farmer</p>

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

#### 1. Jumbled words.

1. ydgree \_\_\_\_\_
2. ucrel \_\_\_\_\_
3. elvid \_\_\_\_\_
4. ddabuh \_\_\_\_\_
5. ficere \_\_\_\_\_

6. gleae \_\_\_\_\_
7. rettoowdcu \_\_\_\_\_
8. ndaro \_\_\_\_\_
9. ersantv \_\_\_\_\_
10. nncugin \_\_\_\_\_

**2. Odd one out.**

- |                |              |               |               |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. legend   | B. folk tale | C. lyrics     | D. fable      |
| 2. A. plot     | B. title     | C. characters | D. fairy tale |
| 3. A. cheerful | B. wicked    | C. greedy     | D. cruel      |
| 4. A. fox      | B. eagle     | C. tortoise   | D. witch      |
| 5. A. ogre     | B. monster   | C. devil      | D. fairy      |

**3. Write the name of these pictures then label the pictures with the phrases in the box.**

	a) A large, ugly, and frightening imaginary creature.		
0. A- Monster			
	b) A man who served his sovereign or lord as a mounted soldier in armour.	5. 	f. A fast-running, long-eared mammal, having very long hind legs and typically found in grassland or open woodland.
1.			
	c) A woman thought to have evil magic powers, popularly depicted as wearing a black cloak and pointed hat, and flying on a broomstick.	6. 	g) A man-eating giant
2.			
	d) The son of an emperor.	7. 	h) The daughter of an emperor.
3.			
	e) A woman who has magical powers always helps the poor.	8. 	i) A person who cuts down trees or branches, especially for fuel.
4.			

**Your answers:**

0. A- monster	1. ....	2. ....
3. ....	4. ....	5. ....
6. ....	7. ....	8. ....

**4. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to complete these sentences.**

1. A creature is half of human and half of fish.  
 A. mermaid      B. fish fairy      C. ogre      D. merlion
2. What a \_\_\_\_\_ king he is! He killed all prisoners.  
 A. brave      B. cruel      C. generous      D. mean
3. A \_\_\_\_\_ appears to help the woodcutter find his axe.  
 A. fable      B. princess      C. fairy      D. witch
4. The witch gave Snow White a \_\_\_\_\_ apple.  
 A. delicious      B. poisonous      C. poison      D. ripped
5. Many people believe in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. Buddha      B. Church      C. King      D. Queen
6. The tortoise \_\_\_\_\_ ahead of the hare at 3:30 yesterday afternoon.  
 A. ran      B. was running      C. running      D. is running
7. At this time party, Anna \_\_\_\_\_ a party at Royal Palace.  
 A. was attending      B. were attending      C. attend      D. am attending
8. The Buddhist Festival is held **annually**. The word "annually" the same meaning with \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. every year      B. twice a year      C. two year once      D. usually
9. The Starfruit Tree is a \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. legend      B. fairy tale      C. fable      D. folk tale
10. When the prince \_\_\_\_\_ Cinderella at the party, she \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful gown.  
 A. saw/ wearing      B. seen/ was wearing      C. sees/ wear      D. saw/ was wearing

**5. Write the correct form of verbs. Use the past continuous or the past simple.**

1. The woodcutter (work)\_\_\_\_\_ in the woods. He (hear)\_\_\_\_\_ a loud scream from a small cottage.
2. Hans Christian Andersen (grow up)\_\_\_\_\_ in a Danish village and (move)\_\_\_\_\_ to the big city in 1900s.
3. Cinderella (have to)\_\_\_\_\_ work hard all day since her father died.
4. Cinderella (dress)\_\_\_\_\_ in rags with a dusty gray face from the cinders while her stepsisters always (dress)\_\_\_\_\_ splendid and elegant clothes.
5. I (see)\_\_\_\_\_ the accident when I (wait)\_\_\_\_\_ for the taxi.
6. While people (talk)\_\_\_\_\_ to each other, he (read)\_\_\_\_\_ his book.
7. Who she (dance)\_\_\_\_\_ with at the party last night?
8. While we (play)\_\_\_\_\_ basketball in the park, Mary (fall)\_\_\_\_\_ over.
9. When Cinderella (run)\_\_\_\_\_ she (loose)\_\_\_\_\_ one of her slippers.
10. Someone (knock)\_\_\_\_\_ the door at midnight yesterday.

**6. Combine each pair of sentences using When or While to make one sentence.**

1. I (travel) around London. I (meet) some very nice people. (when)

2. She (speak) on the phone. Her mother (cook) dinner. (while)

3. I (leave) the house this morning. The sun (shine). (when)

---

4. Kathy (burn) her hand. He (iron) her clothes last night. (when)

---

5. I (do) the washing-up. I broke a plate. (when)

---

6. Tom (play) the piano, his mother (do) the washing-up at 7pm last night. (while)

---

7. He (drink) some juice. I (eat) a few chips. (when)

---

8. I (have) dinner. I suddenly (hear) a loud bang. (when)

---

9. My father (work) in the garden, an old friend (pass) this morning. (when)

---

10. Snow White was at home alone. The witch (appear) and give) her a poisonous apple. (when)

---

## 7. Complete the story using the correct form of verbs in brackets.

### The Frog Prince

They lived a beautiful princess who 1. (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a golden ball. One day, the ball fell into a pond. She 2. (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very upset and 3. (not know) \_\_\_\_\_ what to do. While she 4. (sit) \_\_\_\_\_ there crying, a frog hopped out of the pond and asked, "Why are you crying, princess?" She told him about her golden ball. The ugly frog said, "I can help you get the ball but what will you give me in return?" "I will give you anything you want!" exclaimed the princess. The frog immediately 5. (drive) \_\_\_\_\_ into the water and got the ball for her. The princess was very happy. The frog 6. (remind) \_\_\_\_\_ her, "Remember that you promised me anything. Well, I want to be your friend, eat from your plate, and sleep in your palace!" The princess 7. (hate) \_\_\_\_\_ the idea but she agreed and ran back to the palace. The next morning, the princess found the frog waiting for her. He said, "I have come to live in your palace." Hearing this, the princess 8. (run) \_\_\_\_\_ to her father, crying. When the kind king heard about the promise, he told her, "A promise is a promise and you must 9. (keep) \_\_\_\_\_ your word. You must let the frog stay here." The princess had no choice and let the frog stay. He 10. (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ from her plate during dinner and 11. (ask) \_\_\_\_\_ the princess to take him to her bed at night. The princess picked him up angrily and threw him to the floor. In a flash, the frog turned into a handsome prince. He told the princess that he had actually been under the spell of a wicked witch. The princess 12. (fall) \_\_\_\_\_ in love with the prince and lived happily ever after.

## 8. Each sentences below has one mistake. Underline the mistakes and correct them.

1. One of my friends calling me very late last night. was calling

2. Yesterday is a bad day for me.

3. The Wilson built a new house in Washington DC this year.

4. I am listening to music when Jack came last night.

5. The princess had no choice and let the frog staying in her bed.

6. When a dragon was fly over the tower, he heard the princess crying for help.

7. What a beautiful princesses she is!

8. I phoned you around 9 a.m last night, but no reply.

**C. SPEAKING****1. Guessing the story: using the information in the table to guess the title of the stories.**

a)

Title	.....
Genre	Fable
Main characters	A tortoise, a hare
Plot	The running competition between a boasted hare and a slow tortoise but the end the tortoise was the winner.

b)

Title	.....
Genre	Fairy tale
Main characters	The King, the Queen, the princess, the wicked fairy, the good fairies.
Plot	The story about a beautiful princess who was cursed by a wicked fairy that she would die when she was sixteen by touching a spindle. But the good fairies changed the curse and the princess was saved by a kiss of a handsome prince They fell in love and lived happily ever after.

c)

Title	.....
Genre	Fairy tale
Main characters	Snow White, seven dwarfs, the wicked Queen, the Prince
Plot	A beautiful girl, Snow White, takes refuge in the forest in the house of seven dwarfs to hide from her stepmother, the wicked Queen. But one day while the dwarfs are at their diamond mine, the Queen arrives at the cottage disguised as an old peddler woman and persuades Snow White to bite into a poisoned apple. The dwarfs, warned by the forest animals, rush home to chase the witch away, but they are too late to save Snow White from the poisoned apple. They place her in a glass coffin in the woods and mourn for her. The Prince, who has fallen in love with Snow White, happens by and awakens her from the wicked Queen's deathlike spell with "love's first kiss."

d)

Title	.....
Genre	Folk tale
Main characters	King Triton, Ariel, Ursula and Prince
Plot	This is the story of a little mermaid named Ariel, who dreams of going on land. When her father, King Triton, forbids her to go on land. She goes to meet Ursula, the Sea Witch, to strike a deal but Ariel doesn't know that Ursula has plans to destroy her to get revenge on her father.

**2. A. In 5 minutes list all stories you have ever read.**


---



---



---



---



---



---

**B. Which story do you like best? Tell your friend about the content of this story.**

The story I like best is ...

It is about ...

.....

I like it best because ...

## D. READING

### 1. Read the story then do the tasks below.

#### WOODEN BOWL

An old man lived with his son, daughter-in-law, and four-year old grandson. The old man's hands trembled, his eyesight was blurred, and his step faltered. The family ate together at the table. But the elderly grandfather's shaky hands and failing sight made eating difficult. Peas rolled off his spoon onto the floor, the milk spilled on the tablecloth. The son and daughter-in-law became irritated with the mess. So the husband and wife set a small table in the corner.

There, Grandfather ate alone while the rest of the family enjoyed dinner. However, grandfather still broke his dishes so his food was served in a wooden bowl! When the family glanced in Grandfather's direction, sometime he had a tear in his eye when he was sitting alone. The only words the couple had for him were sharp admonitions when he dropped a fork or spilled food.

The four-year-old watched it all in silence.

One evening the father noticed his son playing with wood scraps on the floor. He asked the child sweetly, "What are you making?" Just as sweetly, the boy responded, "Oh, I am making a little bowl for you and Mama to eat your food in when I grow up." The four-year-old smiled and went back to work. The words so struck the parents so that they were speechless. Then tears started to stream down their cheeks. Though no word was spoken, both knew what must be done. That evening the husband took Grandfather's hand and gently led him back to the family table. For the remainder of his days he ate every meal with the family. And for some reason, neither husband nor wife seemed to care any longer when a fork was dropped, milk spilled, or the tablecloth soiled.

*Moral: You reap what you sow. Regardless of your relationship with your parents, you'll miss them when they're gone from your life. Always Respect, Care for and Love them.*

**A. Read the story and try to guess the meaning of these words below. The number 0 has been done for you.**

0. tremble: run rẩy

1. blurred: \_\_\_\_\_

2. irritate: \_\_\_\_\_

3. Glance: \_\_\_\_\_

4. speechless: \_\_\_\_\_

5. Admonition: \_\_\_\_\_

**B. Now match the word in task 1 in A with their meaning in column B.**

A	B
1. tremble	A. unable to see clearly
2. blurred	B. take a brief or hurried look
3. irritate	C. shaking hand because of old age
4. glance	D. make someone annoyed, impatient, or angry
5. speechless	E. the words to warn or criticize the others
6. admonition	F. unable to speak

**C. Choose the best answer.**

1. The wooden bowl is a \_\_\_\_\_.

A. moral story      B. fairy story

C. fable

D. legend

2. From the story, we draw a lesson “\_\_\_\_\_”.

- A. You are what you eat  
C. Look before you leap  
3. Why the old man's food was served in a wooden bowl.  
A. Because he likes it.  
B. The son and daughter-in-law became irritated with the mess he made.  
C. Because he broke his dishes.  
D. Because his grandson broke his dishes.
4. What did the four year old boy learn from his parents?  
A. He took care of himself.  
B. He set a table in the corner for his parents to eat there.  
C. He watched it all in silence.  
D. He also made a little bowl for his parents.
5. Did the couple realize their false?  
A. Yes, they did.      B. No, they didn't.      C. No information      D. They were speechless

## 2. Read the fable "Fox and the goat".

### Fox and The Goat

Once a fox was roaming around in the dark. Unfortunately, he fell into a well. He tried his level best to come out but all in vain. So, he had no other alternative but to remain there till the next morning. The next day, a goat came that way. She peeped into the well and saw the fox there. The goat asked "what are you doing there, Mr. Fox?"

The sly fox replied, "I came here to drink water. It is the best I have ever tasted. Come and see for yourself." Without thinking even for a while, the goat jumped into the well, quenched her thirst and looked for a way to get out. But just like the fox, she also found herself helpless to come out.

Then the fox said, "I have an idea. You stand on your hind legs. I'll climb on your head and get out. Then I shall help you come out too." The goat was innocent enough to the shrewdness of the fox and did as the fox said and helped him get out of the well.

While walking away, the fox said, "Had you been intelligent enough, you would never have got in without seeing how to get out."

### A. Put the pictures in the correct order of the story.







### B. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

- What is the moral lesson of this story?  
A. Look before you leap. Do not just blindly walk into anything without thinking.  
B. Do as you think.  
C. You should help others without thinking.  
D. The goat is kind so we should follow him.
- Why was the fox in the well?  
A. Because he came there to drink water.

- B. Because he unfortunately fell into the well. B  
 C. Because the goat pushed him down.  
 D. Because he jumped into the well.
3. Why was the goat in the well?  
 A. Because he was cheated by the fox.  
 B. Because the fox pushed him down.  
 C. Because he jumped into the well.  
 D. Because he wanted to help the fox.
4. Why did the fox get out the well?  
 A. He climbed on the wall.  
 B. He used a ladder.  
 C. He climbed on the goat's head and get out.  
 D. Someone helped him to get out.

**E. WRITING**

- 1. Write full sentences, using the suggested words and phrases. You can add more words or make suitable changes.**

1. Little Red Riding hood/ lived/ a wood/ her mother.

---

2. When/ she/ pick up/ some flowers/ the path,/ she/ meet/ wicked/ wolf.

---

3. The wolf/ ran/ Granny's house/ and/ swallow/ Granny.

---

4. What/ the eagle/ promise/ the younger brother?

---

5. Gióng saint/ live/ a village/ Phu Dong.

---

6. Emperor/ Hung Vuong/ announce/ the prince/ make/ the most/ delicious/ food/ would/ become/ new emperor.

---



---

- 2. Imagine to make up your own story by fill in this table.**

Title	.....
Genre	.....
Characters	.....
Plot	.....

- 2. Now imagine you are the main character of your story, write a story about 130 words to retell your story.**
- 
- 
- 
-

**UNIT 6: FOLK TALES****TEST YOURSELF****A. PHONETICS****1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

- |                     |                    |                    |                        |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>greedy</u> | B. <u>cheerful</u> | C. <u>engineer</u> | D. <u>volunteer</u>    |
| 2. A. <u>buddha</u> | B. <u>hare</u>     | C. <u>horse</u>    | D. <u>neighborhood</u> |
| 3. A. <u>giant</u>  | B. <u>generous</u> | C. <u>ogre</u>     | D. <u>generation</u>   |
| 4. A. <u>brave</u>  | B. <u>fable</u>    | C. <u>buddha</u>   | D. <u>tale</u>         |
| 5. A. <u>knight</u> | B. <u>evil</u>     | C. <u>lion</u>     | D. <u>child</u> .      |

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

- |                 |             |                |               |
|-----------------|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. emperor   | B. dragon   | C. invader     | D. legend     |
| 2. A. fairy     | B. princess | C. magician    | D. mermaid    |
| 3. A. marvelous | B. handsome | C. considerate | D. ugly       |
| 4. A. socialise | B. tortoise | C. society     | D. woodcutter |

**B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR.****1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. What a \_\_\_\_\_ fairy!  
A. considerate      B. consideration      C. considerately      D. considerful
2. The title is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the type of the story      B. the name of the story  
C. the people who the story is about      D. the content of the story
3. He \_\_\_\_\_ as fast as possible in the contest, so he got the first prize.  
A. was running      B. is running      C. were running      D. ran
4. The workers \_\_\_\_\_ the windows for several hours.  
A. has clean      B. have cleaned      C. cleaned      D. bored
5. The knight \_\_\_\_\_ a horse to the castle.  
A. was riding      B. riding      C. were riding      D. runs
6. My father \_\_\_\_\_ very angry with me last Saturday.  
A. was      B. were      C. is      D. are
7. A little princess \_\_\_\_\_ a ball and \_\_\_\_\_ me accidentally (throw/hit).  
A. throw/ hit      B. threw/ hit      C. throws/ hit      D. threw/ hitting
8. Alice \_\_\_\_\_ down the street when it begins to rain.  
A. is going      B. are going      C. was going      D. went
9. He \_\_\_\_\_ as fast as possible in the contest, so he got the first prize.  
A. was running      B. is running      C. were running      D. ran
10. Neil Armstrong \_\_\_\_\_ the first person to walk on the Moon.  
A. was      B. is      C. be      D. have been

**2. Give the correct form of the words in brackets.**

1. She was crying when a fairy (appear)\_\_\_\_\_.
2. The Queen gave (birthday)\_\_\_\_\_ to a lovely baby girl.
3. The King and the Queen held a big (celebrate)\_\_\_\_\_ for the newborn princess.
4. Her mother was always (care)\_\_\_\_\_ to keep her away from spindles.

5. We saw a (beauty) \_\_\_\_\_ princess in Royal palace.
6. Their (communicate) \_\_\_\_\_ is always good.
7. He used all his (strong) \_\_\_\_\_ to force the door open.
8. A fairy store is an (imagine) \_\_\_\_\_ story typically involving magic or fairies.

### 3. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

Many, many years ago, in a kingdom far, far away there (1)\_\_\_\_ a beautiful princess. She (2)\_\_\_\_\_ long red hair and (3)\_\_\_\_\_ roses so much that everyone (4)\_\_\_\_\_ her Princess Rose. Every evening after dusk, Princess Rose (5)\_\_\_\_\_ on the balcony and (6)\_\_\_\_\_ her hands. A golden bird came flying out of nowhere and (7)\_\_\_\_\_ on her shoulder. Instantly, the princess's hair (8)\_\_\_\_\_ to shine, ablaze with brilliant red light. When the bird started to warble an (9)\_\_\_\_\_ tune, Princess Rose joined it in a song, and everyone in the kingdom (10)\_\_\_\_ and had sweet dreams till the break of dawn.

- |                    |                 |                |                 |
|--------------------|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. lived        | B. lives        | C. living      | D. life         |
| 2. A. has          | B. is           | C. had         | D. was          |
| 3. A. loves        | B. loved        | C. loving      | D. to love      |
| 4. A. calls        | B. call         | C. called      | D. calling      |
| 5. A. went up      | B. went         | C. went in     | D. went out     |
| 5. A. clapped      | B. was clapping | C. claps       | D. were clapped |
| 7. A. alighted     | B. put          | C. land off    | D. stood        |
| 8. A. begin        | B. began        | C. starts      | D. starting     |
| 9. A. enchant      | B. enchantment  | C. enchanted   | D. enchanting   |
| 10. A. fall asleep | B. sleeps       | C. fell asleep | D. sleepy       |

### C. SPEAKING

#### 1. Game: "Which story is this?

Rules of the game:

- Work with partners.
- Choose randomly a picture you like and describe it in 20 seconds. Your partners to guess the name of the story you are describing.
- Do it in turn who guess more stories will be the winner.



#### 2. Speaking.

**Topic: If you could be a character in a fairy tale who did you want to be? And why?**

**You can say:**

- Who do you want to be?  
 What does he/she look like?  
 What does he/she do?  
 Why do you want to be he/she?  
 What would you do if you were he/she?

**D. READING**

**1. The following reading has 5 paragraphs A-E. Choose the most suitable heading for paragraphs B-E from the list of heading below. Write appropriate numbers in the space provided.**

*Note: There are more headings than paragraphs so you will not use all of them.*

**List of headings**

1. Fairy tales show kids how to handle problems.
2. Fairy tales give parents opportunities to teach critical thinking skills.
3. Fairy tales develop a child's imagination.
4. Fairy tales teach lessons.
5. Fairy tales give us a common language.
6. Fairy tales cross cultural boundaries.
7. Fairy tales build emotional resiliency.

Example:

Answer:

1

- Paragraph A  
 Paragraph B  
 Paragraph C  
 Paragraph D  
 Paragraph E

---



---



---



---

**The Importance of Fairy Tales**

*"If you want your children to be intelligent, read them fairy tales. If you want them to be more intelligent, read them more fairy tales."*

- Albert Einstein -

**A.** We learn from the characters in stories, even as adults. They help us because we connect to our own lives, dreams, anxieties, and consider what we would do in these situations. Fairy tales help children learn how to navigate life.

**B.** Fairy tales show real life issues fantastical scenario where most often the hero triumphs. Children need to discover in a safe environment that bad things happen to everyone. Because guess what? No one in life is immune from challenges - so we need to build capacity in our children. Do we build emotional muscles so our children can hang on during tough times or do we shelter our kids, protecting them, leaving them so weak they can't handle anything requiring strength?

**C.** Many cultures share common fairy tales like Cinderella, with their own cultural flavor. We read the versions and know we all share something important, the need to make sense of life with story, and the hope for good to triumph over evil.

**D.** Use fairy tales to teach morals and lessons. What can you learn from Goldilocks? How about Cinderella or Jack and the Beanstalk?

**E.** Parents may find opportunities to discuss ethical concepts related to a story, while reading with their children. Were the acts of the hero appropriate? What else could he have done? What would you have done if you were in his situations? Children eventually build their critical thinking skills.

**2. Read the passage again then answer these question.**

1. Do you think the statement of Albert Einstein is true?

- 
2. Why fairy tales show children how to handle problems?
- 
3. Why should we build capacity in our children?
- 
4. How do the parents use fairy tales as a way to teach children critical thinking?
- 

**E. WRITING****1. Choose the words or phrases that are not correct in Standard English.**

1. Peter gets used to do his homeworks in the evening.  
A      B      C      D
2. They aren't go to bed at 9 o'clock.  
A      B      C      D
3. I don't have some apples but I have some bananas.  
A      B      C      D
4. That's my sister over there. She stands next to the window.  
A      B      C      D
5. He's waiting to the bus at the moment.  
A      B      C      D
6. My father never have lunch at home last year.  
A      B      C      D
7. We need eight hundred gram of beef.  
A      B      C      D
8. There used to have a temple old near our school.  
A      B      C      D
9. How long are you going to stay in Vietnam?  
A      B      C      D
10. Would you like any sugar? - Yes please.  
A      B      C      D

**2. Write full sentences, using the suggested words or phrases. You can add some words or make suitable changes.**

1. Hue Festival/ big/ cultural/ event/ of/ Hue City.  

---
2. Visitors/can/ enjoy/ colourful/ grand/ opening/ ceremony/ unique/ performances.  

---
3. Vu Lan/ Festival/ Buddhist/ festival/ that/ emerged/ long/ ago/ Vietnam.  

---
4. Hoi An/ famous/ its/ ancient /buildings/, /shops/ pagodas.  

---
5. Cultural/ festivals/ occur/ every/ country/ world.  

---

**WRITTEN TEST 2****Time: 45 minutes****A. PHONETICS****I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                             |                           |                           |                             |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>watc<u>hed</u></u> | B. <u>talk<u>ed</u></u>   | C. <u>stop<u>ped</u></u>  | D. <u>celebr<u>ate</u>d</u> |
| 2. A. <u>spend<u>s</u></u>  | B. <u>laugh<u>s</u></u>   | C. <u>friend<u>s</u></u>  | D. <u>potato<u>s</u></u>    |
| 3. A. <u>fair</u>           | B. <u>straigh<u>t</u></u> | C. <u>train</u>           | D. <u>wait</u>              |
| 4. A. <u>old</u>            | B. <u>sociab<u>e</u>l</u> | C. <u>outgo<u>ing</u></u> | D. <u>volunteer</u>         |

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

- |                   |                |               |               |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. celebration | B. competition | C. television | D. invitation |
| 2. A. fairy       | B. princess    | C. monster    | D. record     |
| 3. A. alone       | B. poison      | C. legend     | D. mermaid    |
| 4. A. appearance  | B. annoyance   | C. outgoing   | D. character  |

**B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY****1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- The atmosphere is \_\_\_\_\_ in the festival.  
A. hot      B. cold      C. noisy      D. quiet
- People often \_\_\_\_\_ many useful and interesting activities in a festival.  
A. act      B. play      C. take part in      D. perform
- \_\_\_\_\_ is a traditional story written for children that usually involve imaginary creatures and magic.  
A. Fairy tale      B. Fable      C. Legend      D. Folk tale
- \_\_\_\_\_ is a story that parents have passed on to their children through speech over many years.  
A. Fairy tale      B. Fable      C. Legend      D. Folk tale
- A/an \_\_\_\_\_ always appears whenever the main character gets into trouble in tales fairy.  
A. ogre      B. fairy      C. witch      D. monster
- It is commonly believed that a \_\_\_\_\_ of matches is the symbol of luck in the New Year.  
A. bar      B. can      C. box      D. bottles
- The "OK" hand sign in Japan means \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. giving me money      B. accepting      C. doing a good job      D. agreeing
- In Vietnam, children have to \_\_\_\_\_ their head when greeting old people.  
A. shake      B. nod      C. bow      D. pat
- \_\_\_\_\_ *Banh chung* on Tet holiday is originated from the story of Lang Lieu prince.  
A. Do      B. Doing      C. Make      D. Making
- In my hometown, the wrestling festival often \_\_\_\_\_ at the beginning of February.  
A. does      B. gives      C. starts      D. finish

**2. Give the correct form of the verb in the brackets.**

- When I (travel)\_\_\_\_\_ the Disney Land, I (see)\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of characters in fairytales.
- She (watch)\_\_\_\_\_ TV while her mother (cook)\_\_\_\_\_ dinner for the family.
- At this time yesterday, I (read)\_\_\_\_\_ a cooking book about Korean dishes.
- Children often (go)\_\_\_\_\_ to sleep at 9 p.m. in the west.
- The sun (rise)\_\_\_\_\_ in the east and (set)\_\_\_\_\_ in the west.
- Hurry up! The bus (come)\_\_\_\_\_.

7. I (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ the house this morning to go to the supermarket.
8. Kathy (cut) \_\_\_\_\_ his hand when he (play) \_\_\_\_\_ with a sharp knife last night.
9. Snow White (bite) \_\_\_\_\_ into a poisoned apple. out of the pond.
10. While she (sit) \_\_\_\_\_ by a pond crying, a frog (jump) \_\_\_\_\_ out of the pond.

## C. READING

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

### Halloween Fun

Halloween is one of the most famous holidays in the U.S, and it is on October 31. People carve pumpkins and make funny faces on them. These are called “Jack-O-Lanterns”. On October 31, children wear a special costume such as a witch, ghost.

They go to many houses and they knock on the door saying, "Trick or Treat". It means that if people don't give them a treat, they will play some kind of trick on the household. So, usually people give candy to **them**.

I carved my first Halloween pumpkin at my Friendship Family's house. First, I cut open the top of the pumpkin and pulled the seeds out. It was not good for me because it was sticky and smelled awful. I had never carved a pumpkin, so it was interesting for me. Next, I carved the eyes and the mouth. I wanted to make a face like a pirate. When I finished making the face, I put a candle inside. It was very beautiful, so I was happy.

I had a good experience because I learned one new idea about American culture by taking part in it. I think Halloween is an interesting American holiday which involves all family members and neighbors too!

1. When is Halloween in the US?  
 A. October, 29<sup>th</sup>      B. October, 30<sup>th</sup>      C. October, 31<sup>st</sup>      D. November, 1<sup>st</sup>
2. What DO NOT people do on Halloween? (choose more than one answer)  
 A. making funny faces      B. eating pumpkins  
 C. wearing special clothes      D. playing tricks on people  
 E. lighting candles      F. writing letters to each other
3. What do the children say after they knock the door?  
 A. "Trick or Trick"      B. "Trick or Treat"      C. "Treat or Trick"      D. "Treat or Treat"
4. Why do people give candy to children on Halloween?  
 A. if people don't give children a treat, the children will not go home.  
 B. if people don't give children a treat, the children will cry until they get candy.  
 C. if people don't give children a treat, the children will not go away and stand in front of their house.  
 D. if people don't give children a treat, the children will play some kind of trick on the household.
5. What does them (paragraph 1) refer to?  
 A. people      B. pumpkins      C. children      D. candies
6. Why was "I" happy to carve a pumpkin?"  
 A. Because it was sticky and smelled awful.  
 B. Because I wanted to make a face like a pirate.  
 C. Because it was very beautiful.  
 D. Because I had never carved a pumpkin before.

## D. WRITING

### 1. Combine ach pair of sentences to make one sentence, using the words given in brackets.

1. Hoa and I came. My parents were preparing to decorate our house for Tet. (WHEN)

---

2. Hai was in Thailand to enjoy the Loy Krathong Festival. Tuan was participating in his local festival. (WHILE)

5. My grandmother does not like festival so much. Festival is too noisy. (BECAUSE)

---

4 Da Lat is quite far away from my house. My parents and I often travel to Da Lat at Tet. (ALTHOUGH)

---

5. The weather is bad. Jonny still decides to participate in the Bedford River Festival. (DESPITE)

**2. Write a short paragraph (5-10 sentences) to introduce about a festival in your country.**

## Suggestions:

What is the name of the festival?

When is it held?

What do they do during the festival?

Why do people celebrate it? Is there any story about its origin (making Chung cake Lang Lieu's legend... )

**Eg:** Thanksgiving is celebrated in November. It is a national holiday where people get together to share the traditional dinner of turkey and pumpkin pie. Thanksgiving started in the autumn of 1621. A group of European settlers in North America invited the Indians to join them for their first harvest in a thanksgiving feast because the Indians had taught them how to grow crops. Since then, Thanksgiving is held annually in America.

## Your writing:

## **E. SPEAKING**

**1. Rearrange the following dialogue in the correct order and read it aloud.**

- A. Uhm. It's a secret. At that time you'll know, Mom.
  - B. Yeah! Will we stay long?
  - C. I'm so excited, so when we visit our grandparents, Mom?
  - D. Wow! What's your surprise?
  - E. We'll visit them on the first day of Tet.
  - F. About two days. Do you have any special plans, darling?
  - J. That's fine. Now it's time to sleep, my baby.
  - H. Great! I'll give them a special surprise.

## Your answers:

1. C      2.      3.      4.      5.      6.      7.      8.

**2. Tell one of the stories in the pictures briefly by using some suggestions and your memory.**

1		4	
---	--	---	--

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- to fight (v)</li> <li>- a piece of pizza</li> <li>- to drop (v)</li> <li>- to cry (v)</li> </ul>		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- starfruit tree</li> <li>- greedy (a) &gt;&lt; generous (a)</li> <li>- a huge bird</li> <li>- to give back</li> <li>- to live happily</li> <li>- to die</li> </ul>
<b>2</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- to break</li> <li>- a bunch of bamboo chopsticks</li> <li>- to unite/ to corporate</li> <li>- family members</li> </ul>	<b>5</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- a running competition</li> <li>- a boasted hare</li> <li>- a slow tortoise</li> <li>- the winner</li> </ul>
<b>3</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- a wicked fairy</li> <li>- good fairies</li> <li>- to be cursed</li> <li>- touch a spindle</li> <li>- to change</li> <li>- to be saved by a kiss</li> <li>- to live happily together</li> </ul>	<b>6</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Little Red Riding Hood</li> <li>- to visit</li> <li>- to meet a wolf</li> <li>- to eat the granny up</li> <li>- the woodcutter</li> <li>- to hit the wolf over the head</li> <li>- to save</li> </ul>

# UNIT 7: POLLUTION

## A PHONETICS

### 1. Put the stress of these words.

*Example: eco 'nomic*

- |               |               |                |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. aquatic    | 6. logic      | 11. politic    |
| 2. mechanic   | 7. identical  | 12. electrical |
| 3. mechanical | 8. public     | 13. romantic   |
| 4. scientific | 9. Plastic    | 14. lyrical    |
| 5. magical    | 10. political | 15. authentic  |

### 2. Find the words that has different stress pattern in each line.

- |                 |               |              |              |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. dramatic  | B. rhythmic   | C. angelic   | D. romantic  |
| 2. A. affect    | B. algae      | C. billboard | D. cholera   |
| 3. A. political | B. electrical | C. identical | D. politic   |
| 4. A. aquatic   | B. radiation  | C. pollution | D. logical   |
| 5. A. industry  | B. industrial | C. poison    | D. poisonous |

## B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

### 1. Name each type of pollution with its relevant words/phrases.

1. too much use of electric lights	
2. caused by the smoke and harmful gases from vehicles and factories	
3. The noise which is harmful to humans and animals. This includes the sound of vehicles, loud speaker ...	
4. telephone towers, power lines, advertising billboards	
5. radiation, land, air, water	
6. lakes, rivers, oceans, groundwater, contamination	
7. The water temperature in stream, rivers, lakes, or oceans change	
8. Earth's surface, destroy, pesticides	

### 2. Complete the table with appropriate verbs, nouns and adjectives.

Verb	Noun	Adjective
1. _____	danger	dangerous
to edit	2. _____	editing/ edited
to annoy	3. _____	annoying/ annoyed
to instruct	instruction	4. _____
5. _____	drama	dramatic
to interest	interest	6. _____
to choose	7. _____	choosing
to heat	heat	8. _____
9. _____	low	low

### 3. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- Walking alone late at night can be (danger)\_\_\_\_\_.
- The latest (edit)\_\_\_\_\_ of this book contains many illustrative pictures.

3. Her younger sister can be (annoy) \_\_\_\_\_ when she behaves haughtily.
4. You must read the (instruct) \_\_\_\_\_ carefully before you use the new oven.
5. We were taken aback at the (drama) \_\_\_\_\_ changes in our village; each home owns a computer now.
6. It is always (interest) \_\_\_\_\_ to watch the cubs at play.
7. My mother advised me to be careful in my (choose) \_\_\_\_\_ of friends.
8. The (hot) \_\_\_\_\_ makes everybody very drowsy during the lesson in class.
9. The couple came here at the special (invite) \_\_\_\_\_ of the prime minister.
10. Please (low) \_\_\_\_\_ the volume of your voice. I can even hear you from next door.

#### **4. Choose the correct answers.**

1. Many species of wildlife are becoming extinct, \_\_\_\_\_ the rainforests are being destroyed.  
 A. therefore      B. since      C. consequently      D. so
2. Hemp can be used to make paper, \_\_\_\_\_ it could reduce the need for logging.  
 A. consequently      B. due to      C. so      D. since
3. \_\_\_\_\_ logging provides jobs and profits, the government is reluctant to control it.  
 A. so      B. Consequently      C. Since      D. Due to
4. Hemp was grown throughout history \_\_\_\_\_ its versatility; it can be used to make many different things.  
 A. due to      B. because      C. since      D. as a result
5. Hemp is related to the marijuana plant; \_\_\_\_\_ it is illegal in many countries.  
 A. so      B. due to      C. as a result      D. because
6. The polluted chemical waste was dumped into the ocean; \_\_\_\_\_, the mass of fish died.  
 A. because      B. as      C. because of      D. consequently
7. It was guessed that the fish died \_\_\_\_\_ a powerful toxin in the sea water.  
 A. because of      B. because      C. since      D. as a result
8. Many species in BC are threatened \_\_\_\_\_ logging.  
 A. so      B. because      C. since      D. due to
9. Smoking can \_\_\_\_\_ heart disease.  
 A. lead to      B. create      C. causes      D. due to
10. Radioactive pollution is increasing \_\_\_\_\_ the increased use of radioactivity.  
 A. as      B. since      C. because of      D. because

#### **5. Combine the sentences in each pair into a new sentence that shows a cause/ effect relationship. Use cause and effect signal word or phrase given in brackets.**

1. One effect of global warming is that sea levels are rising. The polar icecaps are melting. (because)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
2. The global population has increased. There are much better levels of nutrition. (because of)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
3. Nuclear explosions and detonations of nuclear weapons cause radioactive pollution. (lead to)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
4. More and more roads are being built. Air pollution is rising. (as a consequence)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
5. In the last ten years, many BC valleys have been clearcut. 142 species of salmon have become extinct. (so)  
 \_\_\_\_\_
6. The fish and other aquatic animals have died. The water is polluted. (due to)  
 \_\_\_\_\_

#### **6. Put in the correct prepositions in the blanks.**

It is now almost certain that global warming has been directly caused (1) \_\_\_\_\_ man's use of fossil fuels. This has led (2) \_\_\_\_\_ an international debate about what we should do to reduce the negative effects (3) \_\_\_\_\_ our actions and how we can make the planet safe for our children to live in. One consequence (4) \_\_\_\_\_ this debate has been to improve the level of "green" education in schools and this should result (5) \_\_\_\_\_ greater awareness of this difficult issue in the long term. However, in the short term there still remains much to be done. The reason (6) \_\_\_\_\_ this is that we need to address causes (7) \_\_\_\_\_ the immediate problem.

### 7. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of conditional sentence type 1.

1. If people (pollute) \_\_\_\_\_ the environment, a lot of animals (die) \_\_\_\_\_.
2. If water (consist) \_\_\_\_\_ germs, people (get) \_\_\_\_\_ ill.
3. If the poles (melt) \_\_\_\_\_, huge landmasses (be) \_\_\_\_\_ under water.
4. Many precious animals (disappear) \_\_\_\_\_, if people (cut down) \_\_\_\_\_ trees.
5. If nuclear waste (throw) \_\_\_\_\_ away, it (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very dangerous.
6. If the emission of CO<sub>2</sub> (continue) \_\_\_\_\_ at high rate, the climate (destroy) \_\_\_\_\_.
7. We (save) \_\_\_\_\_ the trees If we (save) \_\_\_\_\_ paper.
8. If schools (teach) \_\_\_\_\_ about environmental problems, All students (know) \_\_\_\_\_ how to protect the environment.
9. If more people (travel) \_\_\_\_\_ by bike or bus, we (not have) \_\_\_\_\_ traffic jam.
10. If the government (fine) \_\_\_\_\_ heavily to the factories, they (not dump) \_\_\_\_\_ sewage into the ocean.

### 8. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of conditional sentence type 2.

1. If I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ the president, I (pass) \_\_\_\_\_ harder regulations for using fertilizers in agriculture.
2. If I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ you, I (not eat) \_\_\_\_\_ that genetically modified potatoes.
3. If big corporations (care) \_\_\_\_\_ more about the environment and less about their own pockets, the pollution from factories (not increase) \_\_\_\_\_ so fast.
4. He (sort) \_\_\_\_\_ his trash, if he (be) \_\_\_\_\_ smart.
5. If the seas (pollute) \_\_\_\_\_, maybe the population of whales (recover) \_\_\_\_\_.
6. If I (not throw) \_\_\_\_\_ this can of Coke into the bushes, I (not know) \_\_\_\_\_ that Coke is poison for wild animals.
7. If the factories (not dump) \_\_\_\_\_ untreated waste into the ocean, fish (die) \_\_\_\_\_ massively.
8. What (do) \_\_\_\_\_ you if you (be) \_\_\_\_\_ President.
9. If the air (not be) \_\_\_\_\_ dirty, the breathing problems (reduce) \_\_\_\_\_.
10. If I (own) \_\_\_\_\_ a lonely island, I (build) \_\_\_\_\_ a huge house by the beach.

### 9. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. If you (send) \_\_\_\_\_ this letter now, she (receive) \_\_\_\_\_ it tomorrow.
2. Kate (go) \_\_\_\_\_ shopping if she (have) \_\_\_\_\_ time in the afternoon.
3. She (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ a year in the USA if it (be) \_\_\_\_\_ easier to get a green card.
4. If her boyfriend (phone/ not) \_\_\_\_\_ today, she (leave) him.
5. If you (go) \_\_\_\_\_ by bike more often, you (be/ not) so flabby.
6. If he (have) \_\_\_\_\_ more time, he (earn) \_\_\_\_\_ karate.
7. He (not buy) \_\_\_\_\_ so much clothes if he (not have) \_\_\_\_\_.
8. If I (play) \_\_\_\_\_ the lottery yesterday, I (have) a chance to hit the jackpot.
9. If I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ rich, my life (change) \_\_\_\_\_ completely.
10. I (invite) \_\_\_\_\_ all my friends if I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a house by the beach.

**10. Write conditional sentences type I or II for these situation.**

1. People eat dirty food. They can be cancer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. A factory directly discharges a large volume of waste water into the Thi Vai River. The river is polluted.  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. Farmers use polluted water to water their plants. People eat these plants, they become sick with diseases such as diarrhea, bacterial inflections even cancer.  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. Thermal pollution takes place. The water temperature in streams, rivers, lakes and oceans will increase or decrease suddenly.  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. People live in radioactive pollution area. They can be skin cancer.  
\_\_\_\_\_

**C. SPEAKING****1. Work with partner and think about the effects of these situations.**

1. What will happen if we breathe in toxic smoke?
2. What will happen if we dump rubbish into the sea? .
3. What will happen if we live near heavy traffic.
4. What will happen if the government can't think of any methods to solve the pollution problems?

**2. Talk about this topic:**

**A river near your neighborhood is polluted seriously. Discuss with your friend and find out the solutions to solve this problem.**

*Hint: You should find out the pollutants cause the river polluted then solve the causes*

**D. READING****1. Read the text then choose the best answer.****ENVIRONMENTAL POLLUTION**

In recent years the problem of environmental pollution has become a serious problem in big cities in our country. So, what are reasons and possible measures for this problem?

Nowadays, we are living in a city with high population density, so domestic waste is the first reason. Then many people's social consciousness is not high. In several areas, they throw rubbish on streets, canals and rivers. It is easy for us to see rubbish of all kinds floating on the water. Moreover, uncultured people even pee in the public place.

Now, let's come to other reasons. Our city is overloaded with vehicles that expel a lot of smoke and dust. This contributes to the heat of the air, and causes pollution.

Besides that, in several places, trees have been cut down to have room for buildings, hotels, or supermarkets. This makes the atmosphere in our city mug and stuffy.

**New words:**

muggy (adj) nồm ẩm, oi bức

stuffy (adj) ngột ngạt

1. What is not the reasons of environmental pollution?
 

A. high population density	B. smoke and dust from vehicles
C. domestic waste	D. the new drainage system

2. What is the first reason of environmental pollution?
 

A. domestic waste	B. smoke and dust from vehicles
C. population density	D. rubbish on streets
3. What is the synonym of the word "consciousness"?
 

A. awareness	B. unculture	C. unconsciousness	D. awakeness
--------------	--------------	--------------------	--------------
4. Why vehicles cause air pollution?
 

A. Vehicles make the atmosphere in our city muggy and stuffy.	B. Because they expel a lot of smoke and dust.
C. Because they consume too much gasoline.	D. Because many people use motorbikes and cars nowadays.
5. How is the drain system in our city?
 

A. It's very modern.	B. It's downgrade.
C. It is new.	D. It is very old and downgrade

## 2. Read the text then decide these sentences are true or false.

### CLIMATE CHANGE AND GLOBAL WARMING

#### **Climate change**

Climate change, also called global warming, refers to the rise in average surface temperatures on Earth. An overwhelming scientific consensus maintains that climate change is due primarily to the human use of fossil fuels, which releases carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases into the air. The gases trap heat within the atmosphere, which can have a range of effects on ecosystems, including rising sea levels, severe weather events, and droughts that render landscapes more susceptible to wildfires.

#### **The green house effect**

While other planets in Earth's solar system are either scorching hot or bitterly cold, Earth's surface has relatively mild, stable temperatures. Earth enjoys these temperatures because of its atmosphere, which is the thin layer of gases that cloak and protect the planet. However, 97 percent of climate scientists agree that humans have changed Earth's atmosphere in dramatic ways over the past two centuries, resulting in global warming.

The exchange of incoming and outgoing radiation that warms the Earth is often referred to as the greenhouse effect because a greenhouse works in much the same way. Incoming UV radiation easily passes through the glass walls of a greenhouse and is absorbed by the plants and hard surfaces inside. Weaker IR radiation, however, has difficulty passing through the glass walls and is trapped inside, thus warming the greenhouse. This effect lets tropical plants thrive inside a greenhouse, even during a cold winter.

#### **Consequences of global warming**

There are two major effects of global warming: the increase of temperature on the earth by about  $3^{\circ}$  to  $5^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $5.4^{\circ}$  to  $9^{\circ}$  Fahrenheit) by the year 2100 and the rise of sea levels by at least 25 meters (82 feet) by the year 2100. Other consequences are listed below:

- Sea levels are rising due to thermal expansion of the ocean, in addition to melting of land ice.
- Amounts and patterns of precipitation are changing.
- The total annual power of hurricanes has already increased markedly since 1975 because their average intensity and average duration have increased.
- Changes in temperature and precipitation patterns increase the frequency, duration, and intensity of other extreme weather events, such as floods, droughts, heat waves, and tornadoes.
- Higher or lower agricultural yields, further glacial retreat, reduced summer stream flows, species extinctions.
- Diseases like malaria are returning into areas where they have been extinguished earlier.

Sources: Wikipedia | Time for change

**Circle the correct answers.**

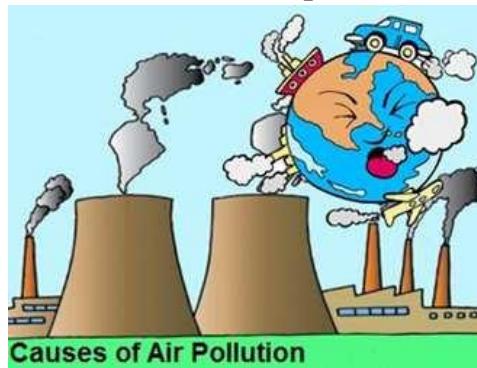
1. Climate change is the rise in average surface temperatures on Earth.
  - a. true
  - b. false
2. Climate change observed in the last decades is natural.
  - a. true
  - b. false
3. Fossil fuels are burnt which releases carbon dioxide and other greenhouse gases into the air.
  - a. true
  - b. false
4. Greenhouse effects have no impacts on our health.
  - a. true.
  - b. false
5. Earth's surface has relatively mild, stable temperatures while the others are not.
  - a. true
  - b. false.
6. UV radiation and IR radiation easily passes through the glass walls of a greenhouse and is trapped inside causing greenhouse effect.
  - a. true
  - b. false
7. Sea levels are rising because of ice melt and thermal pollution.
  - a. true
  - b. false.
8. Global warming causes the increase of temperature on the earth and the rise of sea levels.
  - a. true
  - b. false
9. Humans have changed Earth's atmosphere in dramatic ways over the past twenty centuries.
  - a. true
  - b. false
10. Global warming can cause some diseases like malaria.
  - a. true
  - b. false

## E. WRITING

### 1. Underline the cause a highlight its effect in each of the following sentences.

1. Her computer stopped working due to a virus.
2. Environmental pollution mainly affects animal by causing harm to their living environment, making it toxic for them to live.
3. The water is polluted, so the fish are dead.
4. As for animals, plants, and especially trees, can be destroyed by acid rains.
5. She set fire to the curtain first before the whole house burnt down.
6. Human activities have a negative effect on the ecosystem, destroying crucial layers of it and causing an even more negative effect on the upper layers.
7. We can't see the stars at night because of too much light.
8. The fumes from motorbike, cars make people cough.

### 2. Work with partner, discuss the causes and effects of air pollution.



Outline:

**Causes**

1. exhausted gases from vehicles
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....
5. ....

**Effects**

1. breathing problems
- ....
- ....
- ....
- ....

**3. From the outline, write a paragraph from 80 to 100 words about causes or effects of air pollution.**

*Your writing:*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## UNIT 7: POLLUTION

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the words that has different stress pattern in each line.**

- |                  |             |              |               |
|------------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. domestic   | B. possible | C. physical  | D. musical    |
| 2. A. mineral    | B. national | C. economic  | D. politic    |
| 3. A. photograph | B. organism | C. organic   | D. atmosphere |
| 4. A. historical | B. industry | C. political | D. humidity   |
| 5. A. popular    | B. romantic | C. financial | D. adverbial  |

**2. Underline the words ending in *-ic*, circle the words ending in *-al* in the following sentences. Mark the stress in the word containing *-ic* and *-al*.**

1. She made some grammatical mistakes in her writing.
2. What's your favorite historical movie?
3. Chemical waste has been dumped into the ocean, so the fish and aquatic animals have died.
4. I couldn't think of a logical way to advise Detective Jackson.
5. The laboratory is busy now on a new scientific experiment.
6. Too much stress can lead to physical disease.

#### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

**1. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete these sentences.**

1. Air pollution is severe in \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. cities                                  B. densely populated areas  
 C. industrialised areas                D. all of these
2. Main sources of noise pollution are \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. transportation equipment            B. musical instruments  
 C. heavy machinery                      D. both A and C
3. One of the best solutions to get rid of non-biodegradable wastes is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. burning                                B. dumping                            C. recycling                            D. buying
4. Which of the following is not as a consequence of global warming?  
 A. increased agricultural productivity worldwide  
 B. rising sea level  
 C. worsening health effects  
 D. increased storm frequency and intensity
5. The water temperature in streams, rivers, oceans change is the effect of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. radioactive pollution                B. thermal pollution  
 C. light pollution                        D. visual pollution
6. Which sentences are not the causes of water pollution?  
 A. Factories dump industrial waste into lakes and rivers.  
 B. Sewage from households.  
 C. People burn fossil fuels.  
 D. Farmers use pesticides to kill insects and herbicides to kill weeds.
7. When does thermal pollution take place?  
 A. Sun heats up the lakes and ponds.

- B. Hot water from factories drains into rivers and ponds.  
 C. When hot oil drains into rivers and lakes.  
 D. None of these
8. Nuclear waste is the pollutant of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. air pollution      B. water pollution      C. radioactive pollution      D. soil pollution
9. Which of the following is how to control air pollution?  
 A. Maintaining a healthy distance between the industrial and residential areas.  
 B. Minimum use of loudspeakers and amplifiers especially near silence zones.  
 C. Don't throw chemicals, oils, paints and medicines into the river.  
 D. planting trees
10. Thousands of deer and animals are killed on the road by vehicles in the evening because the glare of cars blinds them is the effect of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. air pollution      B. visual pollution      C. thermal pollution      D. light pollution

## 2. Complete the sentence by filling in a cause or an effect as required.

1. Melanie did not go to school yesterday because \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Due to \_\_\_\_\_, Jason was late for work again.
3. If \_\_\_\_\_, there won't be enough space in the car for each.
4. Mai works late every Friday so that \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Owing to \_\_\_\_\_, the tickets were all sold out.
6. Global warming leads to \_\_\_\_\_.
7. I woke up late this morning because \_\_\_\_\_.
8. A big ships spill oil in Pacific ocean which causes \_\_\_\_\_.

## 3. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. If you come with me, I (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the shopping with you.
2. Wilson (help) \_\_\_\_\_ his mother in the garden if she shows him how to do.
3. If it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_, I will stay at home.
4. Our teacher will be happy if we (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ the poem by heart.
5. If they had enough money, they (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ a new car.
6. We (pass) \_\_\_\_\_ the exam if we studied harder.
7. If Pat (repair) \_\_\_\_\_ his bike, he could go on a bicycle tour with us.
8. She would get 100 pounds if she (sell) \_\_\_\_\_ this old shelf.
9. If I were you, I (invite) \_\_\_\_\_ Jack to the party.
10. If the weather (be) \_\_\_\_\_ fine, the children can walk to school.

## C. SPEAKING

### Part 1: Two-way discussion

Work with partners, discuss and answer the questions below.

1. Is air pollution a problem in your country?
2. What are some of the causes of air pollution?
3. How pollution can affect to our health?
4. Do you think problems with the cleanliness of air will improve in the future?
5. What can an individual do to reduce the pollution in your city?

### Part 2: Group work

Work in group of four, discuss and find out the solutions to control air pollution in your city.



**D. READING****Pollution and its Negative Effects**

Pollution is the degradation of natural environment by external substances introduced directly or indirectly. Human health, ecosystem quality and aquatic and terrestrial biodiversity may be affected and altered permanently by pollution.

Pollution occurs when ecosystems can not get rid of substances introduced into the environment. The critical threshold of its ability to naturally eliminate substances is compromised and the balance of the ecosystem is broken.

The sources of pollution are numerous. The identification of these different pollutants and their effects on ecosystems is complex. They can come from natural disasters or the result of human activity, such as oil spills, chemical spills nuclear accidents... These can have terrible consequences on people and the planet where they live: destruction of the biodiversity, increased mortality of human and animal species, destruction of natural habitat, damage caused to the quality of soil, water and air ..

Preventing pollution and protecting the environment necessitate application of the principles of sustainable development. We have to consider satisfy the needs of today without compromising the ability of future generations to meet their needs. This means that we should remedy existing pollution, but also anticipate and prevent future pollution sources in order to protect the environment and public health. Any environmental damage must be punishable by law, and polluters should pay compensation for the damage caused to the environment.

**New words:**

degradation (n): sự suy giảm

compromise (n): sự thỏa hiệp

terrestrial (adj): thuộc về trái đất, ở trên mặt nước

mortality (n): tỉ lệ tử vong

diversity (n): đa dạng sinh học

remedy (v): cứu chữa

**1. Now match the words with their correct descriptions.**

1. remedy	A. The condition or process of degrading or being degraded
2. compromise	B. On or relating to the earth
3. terrestrial	C. The variety of plant and animal life in the world
4. biodiversity	D. An agreement or settlement of a dispute that is reached by each side making concessions.
5. degradation	E. The state of being subject to death
6. mortality	F. Eliminate a disease or condition with medical treatment.

**Your answers:**

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
----	----	----	----	----	----

**2. Read the text again then answer the questions below.**

1. What is the pollution?

\_\_\_\_\_

2. When does pollution occur?

\_\_\_\_\_

3. How is the sources of pollution?

\_\_\_\_\_

4. What can the pollutants of pollution be?

\_\_\_\_\_

5. List three effects of pollution.

\_\_\_\_\_

6. Should polluters pay compensation for the damage caused to the environment?

\_\_\_\_\_

**E. WRITING****1. Complete the sentence with a logical phrase or clause in the box.**

- A. They are not vaccinated.
- B. More babies and children survived.
- C. They are able to return to their villages and provide healthcare.
- D. They improved the sanitation of their villages.
- E. they do not have enough money to vaccinate the girls as well.
- F. they were able to vote on improving water and sanitation.
- G. they could not pay for the medicine.
- H. girls had a chance to learn about health and life skills.

1. Health conditions improved in villages, so

---

2. Due to their community status,

---

3. Because girls learned about health skills,

---

4. Schools for girls were built. Consequently,

---

5. Each year, more girls die of diseases than boys because

---

6. In some villages, parents will only vaccinate boys because

---

7. Several women studied and became nurses and doctors. As a result,

---

8. Some women were not given medical attention by doctors for the reason that

---

**2. Discuss and find solution for some kinds of pollution below. Number 1 has been done for you.**

<b>0. Air pollution</b>	- Use public mode of transportation
	- Save energy such as: electricity
	- Emphasis on clean energy resources such as: solar, wind and geothermal
<b>1. Noise pollution</b>	-
	-
	-
<b>2. Light pollution</b>	-
	-
	-
<b>3. Visual pollution</b>	-
	-
	-
<b>4. Radioactive pollution</b>	-
	-
	-

## UNIT 8: ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES

### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- |                 |               |             |                |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. A. Taiwanese | B. employee   | C. monument | D. volunteer   |
| 2. A. parade    | B. attraction | C. adoptee  | D. iconic      |
| 3. A. referee   | B. obese      | C. disagree | D. nationality |
| 4. A. accent    | B. awesome    | C. cattle   | D. koala       |
| 5. A. official  | B. aquatic    | C. Chinese  | D. politic     |

#### 2. Read the sentences aloud then underline and mark stress on the words ending in *-ese* and *-ee*.

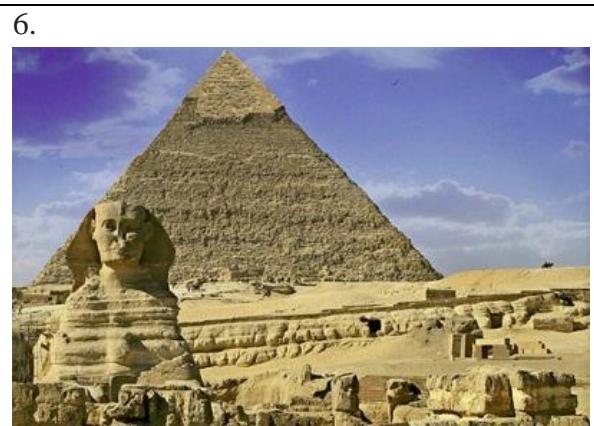
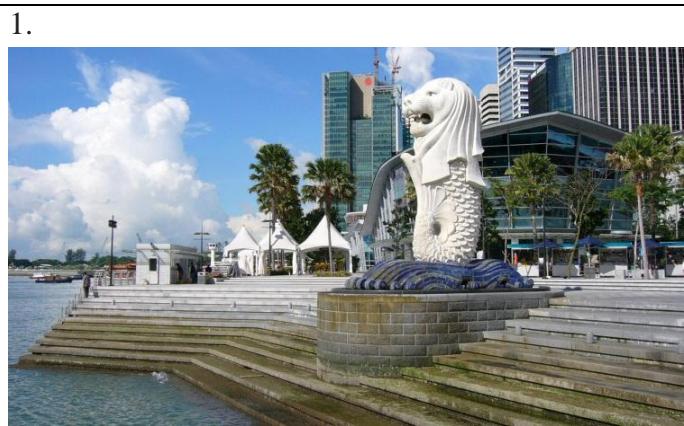
1. He decided to act as a sort of referee.
2. The document is filled with educationese.
3. The typed pages were full of confusing legalese.
4. At least he was never an absentee in heart.
5. TV and newspaper journalists admit journales phrases.
6. Do you agree or disagree with Tim's idea?
7. One of the most difficult language to learn is Japanese.
8. Referee blew to end the match between MU and Arsenal.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

#### 1. Write nationality of these countries.

Country	Nationality
1. Japan	
2. Canada	
3. Nepal	
4. Taiwan	
5. Portugal	
6. Scotland	
7. China	
8. Australia	
9. Wales	
10. Singapore	

2.



2.		7.	
3.		8.	
4.		9.	
5.		10.	

**3. Complete each sentence with the suitable form of word provided.**

1. Scotland is \_\_\_\_\_ for its rich culture and its amazing natural beauty. (FAME)
2. The council has promised to deal with the problem of \_\_\_\_\_ among young people. (EMPLOY)
3. The \_\_\_\_\_ between Vietnam and America is good. (FRIEND)
4. The \_\_\_\_\_ anthem of Viet Nam is sung. (NATION)
5. The Glastonbury Festival in England is a \_\_\_\_\_ of music and it attracts thousands people. (CELEBRATE)
6. California is home to the most \_\_\_\_\_ theme park in the world. (ICON)
7. They enjoy the \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere here. PEACE
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ founder of the city was Helenus, son of Priam, and Virgil. (LEGEND)

**4. Give the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

1. The Little Saigon Tet Parade (be) \_\_\_\_\_ to celebrate the Lunar New Year and to preserve and promote Vietnamese culture.
2. This is the first time I (visit) \_\_\_\_\_ Sydney Opera House in Australia.
3. We (organize) \_\_\_\_\_ successfully 3 events so far this semester.
4. Mount Rushmore (become) \_\_\_\_\_ an iconic symbol of the United States, and has appeared in works of fiction. It (attract) \_\_\_\_\_ over two million people annually.
5. Stonehenge (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a legally protected Scheduled Ancient Monument since 1882.
6. The Sydney Opera House (include) \_\_\_\_\_ a number of performance venues such as: Concert Hall, Joan Sutherland Theatre, Drama Theatre and Playhouse.
7. America's National Independence Day parade (take place) \_\_\_\_\_ annually on July 4<sup>th</sup> at 11:45 am in Washington, D.C.
8. At the moment, Anna (take part in) \_\_\_\_\_ the cooking contest at summer camp in New York.
9. England (be) \_\_\_\_\_ one part of the United Kingdom.
10. Hundreds of people (parade) \_\_\_\_\_ to celebrate Vietnamese Independence Day.

**5. Put in the correct tense of the verb in brackets. Each colony**

Bees, like ants, 1. (live) \_\_\_\_\_ in well-organized colonies. Each colony 2. (have) \_\_\_\_\_ thousands of bees, that is why a hive 3. (always/ buzz) \_\_\_\_\_ another activity. well

The entrance to a beehive 4. (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very well-guarded. Should another insect try to go in and steal honey, the guards 5. (grab) \_\_\_\_\_ it and sting it to death. All the while there 6. (be) \_\_\_\_\_ a busy traffic of bees coming and going.

One after another they 7. (take) \_\_\_\_\_ off while others, heavily loaded with nectar and pollen, land and 8. (enter) \_\_\_\_\_ the hive. There are the forager bees which 9. (fly) \_\_\_\_\_ out and collect food for the other bees in hive. They 10. (do) \_\_\_\_\_ a sort of dance to tell one another where and how far away food is. The one which 11. (find) \_\_\_\_\_ food does the dance and once they 12. (tell) \_\_\_\_\_ where to go, the others fly off to bring back more of the food.

**6. Underline the odd one out.**

1. American, Welsh, Nepalese, England.
2. body language, native language, mother tongue, official language.
3. loch, lake, river, desert.
4. icon, cattle station, symbol, sign.
5. monument, mausoleum, museum, tombstone.
6. festival, carnival, anniversary, employee.

**7. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

1. Trafalgar is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a cape                    B. a town                    C. a square                    D. a bay
2. Loch Ness is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a person                    B. a valley                    C. a lake                    D. a river
3. The London Dungeon \_\_\_\_\_ its visitors on a journey through England's bloody histories.  
A. is talking                    B. took                            C. has took                    D. takes
4. While you \_\_\_\_\_ around the Dungeon, watch out for creepy creatures - the Dungeon employs actors to give its visitors the fright of their lives.  
A. are walking                    B. walks                            C. walked                            D. have walked
5. Passengers \_\_\_\_\_ to smoke in the train.  
A. are not allowed                    B. had not allowed                    C. has not allowed                    D. will not allow

6. What is the name of the most famous clock in Britain?  
**A.** Big Clock      **B.** Big John      **C.** Big Apple      **D.** Big Ben
7. \_\_\_\_\_ the Di Vinci Code? It's an interesting book?  
**A.** Have you ever reading  
**C.** Has you read      **D.** You have read
8. Which country doesn't speak English as an official language?  
**A.** England      **B.** Australia      **C.** Singapore      **D.** Korea
9. The roof may have been leaking for the past few weeks but you do not have to worry about it any longer. It \_\_\_\_\_ now.  
**A.** was repaired      **B.** is repairing repaired      **C.** has repaired      **D.** is being repaired
10. Charles \_\_\_\_\_ his father in the shop until school \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A.** was helping, will start  
**C.** is helping, starts      **B.** helped, was starting  
**D.** has helped, is starting

**C. SPEAKING****1. Complete the conversation with available phrase in the box.**

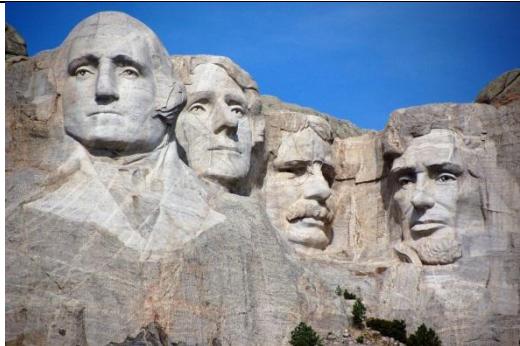
- I am only here for the three days
- My family is waiting for me
- I'm from Seoul, Korea
- This is my first time here.
- I went to San Francisco and Los Angeles.

- Yoko:** "Are there so many people here all the time?"
- Bill:** "I'm not sure. (1)\_\_\_\_\_."
- Yoko:** "Me too. I think this is a great place."
- Bill:** "Yeah. I think so too."
- Yoko:** "Where are you from?"
- Bill:** "I'm visiting from Cleveland, Ohio. How about you?"
- Yoko:** (2) "\_\_\_\_\_."
- Bill:** "How long are you visiting for?"
- Yoko:** "For 2 weeks. (3)\_\_\_\_\_. I want to see the Grand Canyon before I go. I'll probably visit Grand Canyon on Monday."
- Bill:** "Ah, looks like you are having a great time."
- Yoko:** "Yes I am. How long are you visiting for?"
- Bill:** (4) "\_\_\_\_\_. My kids have been wanting to come to Disneyland for a long time."
- Yoko:** That's great."
- Bill:** "Oh. (5)\_\_\_\_\_. I hope you enjoy your stay in America."
- Yoko:** "Thank you. It was nice meeting you."

**2. Work with partners, discuss and write the name of each place under the picture then decide where they are. The first one has been done for you.**



1. The Statue of Liberty - The USA



3. \_\_\_\_\_



3. \_\_\_\_\_



2. \_\_\_\_\_



4. \_\_\_\_\_



6. \_\_\_\_\_

**D. READING****1. Read the text and choose the best answer for each sentence.****The United States**

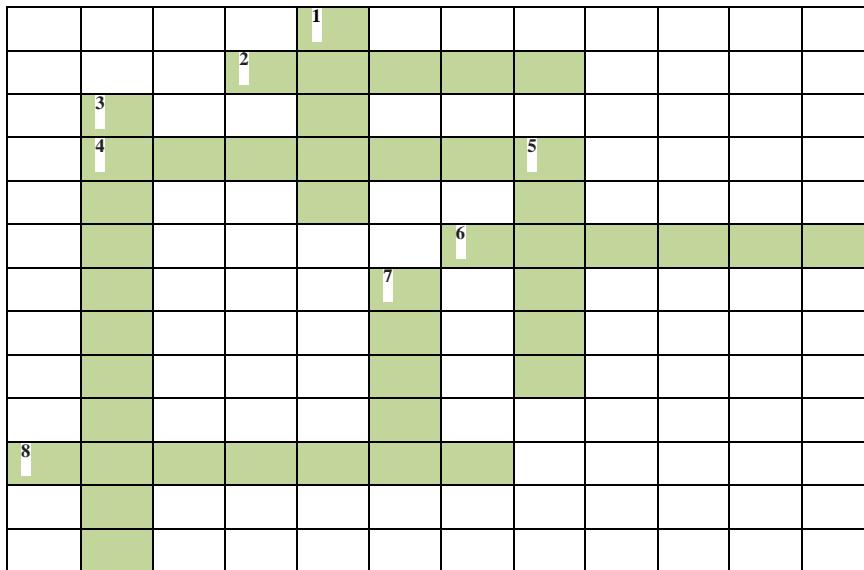
The United States is a large country. It is the third largest in the whole world! It is located in a continent called North America. Parts of the United States touch three different oceans. The United States has tall mountains, wide plains, deserts, hills, rivers, lakes, volcanoes, and even rainforests! People from all over the world have come to live in the United States.

There are 50 states in the United States. The newest states, Alaska and Hawaii, are not connected to the other states. Alaska is the largest state and Hawaii is a chain of islands in the Pacific Ocean.

1. The United States is the \_\_\_\_\_ country in the world.  
 A. second largest      B. largest      C. smallest      D. third largest
2. Alaska is \_\_\_\_\_ and Hawaii is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. a chain of islands, the largest state  
 B. the largest state: a chain of islands  
 C. a chain of islands; the largest state  
 D. not connected to the other states, the largest state.
3. The United States does not have \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. 50 states      B. volcanoes      C. mountains      D. continents
4. Parts of the United States touch \_\_\_\_\_ different oceans.  
 A. 1      B. 2      C. 4      D. 3
5. What continent is the United States in?  
 A. North America      B. Australia      C. Africa      D. Europe

## 2. United States Crossword



Across:		Down:	
2.	The United States touches _____ different oceans.	1.	The United States is the _____ largest nation in the world.
4.	The United States is located in the continent of North _____.	3.	The author of the passage seemed surprised that America had _____.
6.	This state is one of America's _____ newest states.	5.	_____ is America's largest state.
8.	Hawaii is a chain of _____ in the Pacific Ocean.	7.	People from all over the _____ come to live in The United States.

## 3. Read the text and choose the best answer for each sentence.

### BALD EAGLE

The Bald Eagle is a majestic bird. The adult bird has a brown body, brown wings, white head, and large, hooked yellow bill. Younger birds appear all brown.

Bald Eagles almost always live near water because their main food source is fish. Sometimes, however, Bald Eagles will eat dead animals. They will even steal food from other birds such as ospreys and gulls! It was for this reason that the famous Patriot Benjamin Franklin preferred the Wild Turkey as America's National symbol. Nevertheless, the Bald Eagle remains America's symbol.

- How are younger Bald Eagles different from adult Bald Eagles?
  - A. They are smaller.
  - B. They have lighter bodies.
  - C. They have black bills.
  - D. They are totally brown.
- The author seemed surprised that...
  - A. bald eagles eat fish.
  - B. the bald eagle is America's symbol.
  - C. bald eagles steal food from other birds.
  - D. bald eagles have white heads.
- What color is the Bald Eagle's bill?

- |           |          |          |          |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
| A. yellow | B. black | C. white | D. brown |
|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
4. Why do Bald Eagles usually live near water?
- A. Bald Eagles eat fish.  
B. It protects the nest from predators.  
C. Bald Eagles like to swim.  
D. Because they steal food.
5. Benjamin Franklin thought \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the Bald Eagle was a fine choice as America's symbol.  
B. The Bald Eagle was a better choice as America's symbol than the Wild Turkey.  
C. Neither the Wild Turkey or Bald Eagle were good choices as America's symbol.  
D. The Wild Turkey was a better choice as America's symbol than the Bald Eagle.

**E. WRITING****1. Reorder the words to make meaningful sentence.**

1. California/ most/ home/ is/ to/ the/ theme/ in/ iconic/ the/ park/ world.

---

2. The Golden Gate Bridge/ in/ is / icon/ an/ of/ this/ city./ San Francisco/ famous..

---

3. Australia/ home/ is/ to/ animals/ like/ unique/ the/ and/ koala./ kangaroo//

---

4. Scotland/ for/ is/ its/ castles/ historic/ famous/ centuries-old//.

---

5. Australia/ the/ biggest/ has/ cattle/ in/ the/ station/ world.

---

6. The/ garment/ of/ traditional/ men/ is/ Scottish/ kit.

---

**2. List some famous places in the United State you know.**


---



---



---



---



---

**3. From the list, what do you like to visit best? Why?**


---



---



---



---



---

# UNIT 8: ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                 |              |              |             |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. A. degree    | B. affect    | C. obese     | D. algea    |
| 2. A. billboard | B. awesome   | C. examinee  | D. accent   |
| 3. A. legend    | B. addressee | C. cantonese | D. employee |
| 4. A. refugee   | B. trainee   | C. Japanese  | D. engineer |

**2. Mark the stress of each word then say the words aloud.**

1. officialese	5. presentee
2. computerese	6. guarantee
3. appointee	7. legalese
4. conferee	8. committee

### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

**1. Match the word in column A with its definition in column B.**

A	B
1. officialese	A. A person to whom a job or role is <b>assigned</b>
2. computerese	B. The formal and <b>technical</b> language of legal documents
3. appointee	C. The formal and typically style of writing considered to be characteristic of official documents.
4. conferee	D. a product will be repaired or replaced if not of a specified quality
5. presentee	E. A group of people appointed for a specific function by a larger group
6. guarantee	F. A person <b>nominated</b> or <b>recommended</b> for an office or position.
7. legalese	G. A person who <b>attends</b> a conference
8. committee	H. The technical language and jargon used in computing and computer science

**Your answer:**

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

**2. Complete the sentence with a suitable word in the box. There are more words than you need.**

appointees	referees	guarantee	refugees
officialese	committee	obese	presentee

1. The police officials throughout the republic are also \_\_\_\_\_ of the president and are under his orders.
  2. The safety \_\_\_\_\_ is meeting Tuesday to make plans in case of an earthquake.
  3. We \_\_\_\_\_ that if you're not completely satisfied with our product, you'll get your money back, no questions asked.
  4. Many people who come to America are economic \_\_\_\_\_ who hope to build a better life for themselves and their family.
  5. Both the \_\_\_\_\_ in the football match were impartial.
  6. Everyone thought Livia was pregnant, but actually she is just \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. Make the sentence with the present perfect tense.**

1. You/ ever/ keep a pet for more than three years?

---

2. You /eat Thai food before?

---

3. She/ not/ study French for ten years.

---

4. Why/ you/ do your homework already?

---

5. I/ know him for three months.

---

6. She/ not/ see "The Lord of the Rings".

---

7. Who/ he/ meet recently?

---

8. They/ not/ visit/ St. Paul's Cathedral yet.

---

#### **4. Give the correct form of verb in brackets.**

1. Julie \_\_\_\_\_ (read) in the garden.

2. What \_\_\_\_\_ (we/have) for dinner tonight?

3. Jannet often \_\_\_\_\_ (come) over for dinner.

4. She \_\_\_\_\_ (not study) now, she \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV.

5. How often \_\_\_\_\_ (you/go) to restaurants?

6. She \_\_\_\_\_ (take) a salsa dancing class every Tuesday.

7. Take your umbrella, it \_\_\_\_\_ (rain)

8. \_\_\_\_\_ (you/like) spicy food?

9. \_\_\_\_\_ (she/ often/ go) to Scotland?

10. We \_\_\_\_\_ (not/drink) much wine.

### **C. SPEAKING**

**Reorder the sentences to make a conversation about booking the ticket. Then practise it with your friend.**

**Mike:** Yes. Check that for 31<sup>st</sup> in the evening. (A)

**Henrita:** Is this a round trip? Will you need a return ticket, too? (B)

**Mike:** Hello, I need to schedule my trip to Paris for next week? (C)

**Henrita:** Yes, there's a nonstop flight to Paris from Kennedy airport on 24<sup>th</sup> 6AM. On 31<sup>st</sup> you may board flight 309 which is also nonstop at 4:30PM. (D)

**Henrita:** When would you like to travel? (E)

**Mike:** I have to reach Paris by the 24th. (F)

**Henrita:** Would you like to book the tickets then? (G)

**Mike:** What's the cost? (H)

**Henrita:** It'll be \$2750. (I)

**Mike:** Do you accept cards? (K)

**Henrita:** Yes, we do. (L)

**Mike:** Okay, fine. I think that can work for me. (M)

**Your answer:**

---

### **D. READING**

**1. Read the text then choose the best answer.**

**CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS**

Christopher Columbus was born in Genoa, Italy in 1451. While spending most of his early years at sea, Columbus began to believe that he could find a shortcut to the Indies by sailing west across the Atlantic Ocean. Unfortunately, the King of Portugal refused to finance such a trip, and Columbus was forced to present his idea to the King and Queen of Spain. In 1492, King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella agreed to pay for his trip. They gave him a crew and three ships, the Nina, Pinta and Santa Maria. Columbus sailed aboard the Santa Maria.

The trip was long and hard. Many sailors grew restless and wanted to turn around. After two months at sea, land was finally sighted. The ships docked was on the island of Hispaniola. Columbus named the native people he saw "Indians", because he believed he had found the shortcut he was looking for. In actuality, Columbus found North America, a brand new continent at that time. Columbus, however, couldn't be convinced. He died with the belief he had shortcut to Indies. Soon, however, other explorers and nations understood the importance of his discoveries. Columbus' discoveries set the stage for the Age of Exploration, one of the most fascinating and exciting times in world history.

1. Where was A Christopher Columbus born?

- A. The New World      B. Portugal      C. Spain      D. Italy

2 Which is NOT true?

- A. Columbus was born in Italy.  
 B. Columbus received three ships and a crew from the King and Queen of Spain.  
 C. Columbus found a shortcut to the Indies.  
 D. The journey across the Atlantic took two months.

3. Which of the following was NOT one of his ships?

- A. Nina      B. Isabella      C. Pinta      D. Santa Maria

4. Why was Christopher Columbus very important?

- A. He believed he found a shortcut to the Indies.  
 B. He first used the word "Indians".  
 C. He discovered a whole new continent.  
 D. He was one of the bravest explorers of all time.

**2. Read the text again then fill in the blank with a suitable word or phrase from the text.**

1. Columbus believed he could find a shortcut to the \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The King of \_\_\_\_\_ refused to finance his trip.
3. In the year \_\_\_\_\_, Columbus set sail.
4. What did Columbus name the native people he saw? \_\_\_\_\_.

**E. WRITING**

What is your favourite vacation spot? write a paragraph from 100 words to tell about this place.

*You should write:*

- What's the name of this spot?
- Where is it?
- How often do you come here?
- Who do you often go with?
- What do you often do here and why do you like it?

.....  
.....

## UNIT 9: NATURAL DISASTERS

### A. PHONETICS

**1.** Look at the pictures and write -logy or -graphy to complete the words in the spaces. Then read out loud the words.



**2.** Complete the sentences with the words in 1. Then say them aloud.

1. When we learn \_\_\_\_\_, we know about a country's population, location and economy, etc.
2. Celebrities have their \_\_\_\_\_ posted on the Internet.
3. Doing research on \_\_\_\_\_ can help people forecast the weather.
4. In hospital, doctors use \_\_\_\_\_ to diagnose their patients' illness related to bone.
5. People study \_\_\_\_\_ to find out the cultures of the past and the periods of history by examining the remains of buildings and objects found in the ground.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ is a subject that scientifically studies the life and the structure of plants and animals.

**3.** Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                   |                |               |                |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. industry    | B. nature      | C. injure     | D. climate     |
| 2. A. typhoon     | B. tropical    | C. debris     | D. document    |
| 3. A. animal      | B. destroy     | C. erupt      | D. exploit     |
| 4. A. documentary | B. preparation | C. scientific | D. photography |
| 5. A. eruption    | B. science     | C. destroy    | D. volcano     |

### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**1. Look at the pictures and write the words in the spaces provided.****2. Make a sentence with a natural disaster in.**

Ex: 1. A volcanic eruption can destroy crops severely which are planted around the volcano.

2. \_\_\_\_\_
3. \_\_\_\_\_
4. \_\_\_\_\_
5. \_\_\_\_\_
6. \_\_\_\_\_
7. \_\_\_\_\_
8. \_\_\_\_\_
9. \_\_\_\_\_
10. \_\_\_\_\_

**3. Match the words in column A to their definition in column B.**

A	B
1. volcanic eruption	a. a mass of earth, rock, etc. that falls down the slope of a mountain or a cliff
2. earthquake	b. a long period without rain
3. thunderstorm	c. an extremely large wave in the sea caused, for example, by an earthquake
4. landslide	d. a large amount of water spread from a river, sea etc. that covers an area that is normally dry
5. sandstorm	e. a disaster that a volcano explodes and throws out fire, lava, smoke etc.
6. tornado	f. a fire in the forest caused by high temperature
7. flood	g. a sudden violent of the ground
8. drought	h. a storm in a desert in which sand is blown into the air by strong winds
9. tsunami	i. a storm with thunder and lightning and usually very heavy rain
10. wildfire	j. a strong wind that blows in a circle

**Your answer:**

- |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |     |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|
| 1. | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. | 6. | 7. | 8. | 9. | 10. |
|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|-----|

**4. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.**

1. She is good \_\_\_\_\_ meteorology .

- |       |       |       |        |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| A. on | B. in | C. at | D. for |
|-------|-------|-------|--------|
2. Last night volcano Maui \_\_\_\_\_ and the large areas of land were affected.  
 A. erupts              B. erupted              C. erupting              D. erupt
3. When a volcanic eruption occurs, the hot \_\_\_\_\_ pours downhill.  
 A. ash              B. smoke              C. dirt              D. lava
4. Since there are two villages located at the foot of the volcano, the local population was \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. evacuated              B. killed.              C. died              D. injured
5. The earthquake \_\_\_\_\_ have been sent humanitarian aid by many countries.  
 A. victim's              B. elders              C. rescuers              D. soldiers
6. When there is a plane crash, a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ is left.  
 A. dust              B. debris              C. waste              D. piece
7. A powerful \_\_\_\_\_ off the coast of Indonesia sparked a three-metre-high and killed at least 113 people.  
 A. earthquake              B. tornado              C. tsunami              D. landslide
8. A \_\_\_\_\_ often occurs in the mountainous areas because many trees have been cut down.  
 A. forest fire              B. flood              C. tornado              D. landslide
9. \_\_\_\_\_ often happen in rainy season especially in the center of Vietnam.  
 A. droughts              B. storms              C. floods              D. sandstorms
10. Deforestation leads to \_\_\_\_\_ which can be defined as the changes in the average temperature.  
 A. flood              B. climate change              C. sandstorm              D. erosion

#### 5. Read the paragraph below and fill in each blank with a suitable word from the boxes.

##### *Erosion in America*

Erosion of America's farmland by wind and water has been a problem since settlers first put the prairies and grasslands under the plow in the nineteenth century. By the 1930s, (1)\_\_\_\_\_ 282 million acres of farmland (2)\_\_\_\_\_ by erosion. After 40 years of (3)\_\_\_\_\_ efforts, soil erosion has accelerated due to new demands (4)\_\_\_\_\_ on the land by heavy crop pollution. In the years ahead, soil erosion and the pollution problems it causes are likely to replace petroleum scarcity as the nation's most critical (5)\_\_\_\_\_ resource problem.

- |                 |         |         |         |
|-----------------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. A. more than | B. more | C. less | D. than |
|-----------------|---------|---------|---------|
2. A. damaged  
B. was damaged  
C. were damaged  
D. damages
3. A. conserve  
B. conservation  
C. conserving  
D. conservations
4. A. were placed  
B. was placed  
C. which placed  
D. placed
5. A. nature  
B. natural  
C. nation  
D. national

#### 6. Complete the sentences, using the correct passive forms of the verbs in brackets.

1. More trees (plant)\_\_\_\_\_ every year to minimize the adverse impacts or environmental disaster to human beings and other animals.
2. The debris from the plane crash (clear)\_\_\_\_\_ by emergency teams at the moment.
3. Aids (send)\_\_\_\_\_ to the flood victims by the government tomorrow.
4. The town (rebuilt)\_\_\_\_\_ after massive destruction of the earthquake in 2015.
5. People living around the volcano (evacuate)\_\_\_\_\_ for one hour before the eruption happened.
6. Earthquake victims (already send)\_\_\_\_\_ humanitarian aid by many countries.
7. Thousands of buildings in Japan (destroy)\_\_\_\_\_ when the earthquake (happen)\_\_\_\_\_ in 2014.
8. All of the animals (kill)\_\_\_\_\_ by a forest fire in dry seasons.

9. Water (pollute) \_\_\_\_\_ during a flood.  
 10. A mudslide (cause) \_\_\_\_\_ by heavy rainfall last year.

### 7. Give the correct forms of the words in brackets to complete the sentences.

1. This beach is very \_\_\_\_\_ for swimmers because tornadoes often start there. (danger)
2. Her family live near an active volcano, so she's always worried about the \_\_\_\_\_ of her family. (safe)
3. Don't leave the light on. It wastes \_\_\_\_\_. (electric)
4. Mount. Phu Si \_\_\_\_\_ in Japan some years ago. (eruption)
5. We need some \_\_\_\_\_ to cope with natural disasters before they happen. (prepare)
6. Protecting our \_\_\_\_\_ resources especially rainforests is very important to prevent some natural disasters such as landslides, floods, so on. (nature)
7. A flood causes the \_\_\_\_\_ of food and water because it destroys crops and pollutes the fresh water. (short)
8. In tropical region, it is very \_\_\_\_\_ in summer. (storm)
9. Deforestation can cause soil \_\_\_\_\_. (erode)
10. Crops are \_\_\_\_\_ severely by a drought. (destruction)
11. A lot of \_\_\_\_\_ about people and assets were left after a hurricane. (damage)
12. Food and drink are usually \_\_\_\_\_ after a natural disaster occurs. (scarcity)

### 8. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. She (not drink) \_\_\_\_\_ coffee last night. She (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ Coca Cola.
2. He (send) \_\_\_\_\_ you a check last Sunday. \_\_\_\_\_ you (receive) \_\_\_\_\_ it yet?
3. She (make) \_\_\_\_\_ herself a cup of coffee before (sit down) \_\_\_\_\_ on her chair and (finish) \_\_\_\_\_ her works.
4. It looked like someone (break) \_\_\_\_\_ the window with a hammer some time before.
5. After Dr. Johnson (examine) \_\_\_\_\_ her, he (give) \_\_\_\_\_ her a prescription.
6. My family (built) \_\_\_\_\_ a basement to shelter when I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ young because at that time, hurricanes (happen) \_\_\_\_\_ commonly.
7. We (go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the doctor yesterday because we (be) \_\_\_\_\_ sick.
8. It was the first time I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ a tornado in my country.
9. Her grandfather (die) \_\_\_\_\_ 20 years ago. She (never meet) \_\_\_\_\_ him before.
10. The storm (become) \_\_\_\_\_ stronger after the plane (take off) \_\_\_\_\_ for several minutes

### C. SPEAKING

- 1. Talk about the impacts of a natural disaster. Think of a natural disaster that you have seen or heard from others then list the impacts.**

Natural disasters	Impacts
Example: - Forest fire	- reduce the forest area - destroy many species of animals' home - cause air pollution and other disasters such as landslides, food, etc.

- 2. Put the following in the correct order to make a dialogue. Then practise it with your friend.**

A: I'm happy to hear that. Where were you when the earthquake happened?

**B:** But my family were still safe, none of whom was injured.

**C:** I'm sorry to hear that.

**D:** Of course, I'll come. Thank for your invitation. See you later.

**H:** Hi, Harry. Glad to see you. I am very worried about you and your family when I heard that your town was struck by an earthquake last week.

**F:** Now your family is having an architect rebuild my house. I'm happy to invite you to visit my new house next month.

**G:** See ya.

**H:** Thank god. I heard that many people were injured during the earthquake.

**I:** Hello, Liz. I am glad to see you, too. It was the most terrible earthquake that I had ever undergone. Luckily, my family survived.

**J:** I was at school. My house was damaged. At that time, I was very worried about my family whether they were safe or not.

**Your answers:**

**3. Match the sentences to the responses. Then practise with your friends. It can be more than one answer.**

A	B
1. Many houses and buildings were inundated by the tsunami.	a. That's shocking.
2. I won the prize for my design of earthquake warning device.	b. How terrible!
3. The tsunami killed sixty people and missed one hundred.	c. I'm sorry to hear that.
4. Would you like to come to my new house?	d. Congratulation!
5. Her sister is still missing after the earthquake.	e. That sounds great.

**Your answers:**

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.
----	----	----	----	----

## D. READING

**Text 1:**

### Red Alert: Volcanoes

Volcanoes can be fun to learn about. It can be neat to watch them erupt. But if you live near a volcano, you know that they are dangerous! An eruption can look like an explosion. Rock and lava can throw up into the air. Streams of red hot lava quickly run down from the peak of the volcano. The air is filled with deadly gases. These things can put many lives in danger. Scientists have learned that there are many things that they can study to help them tell when an eruption might happen. They can study the movements of the ground. When a volcano is about to erupt, the ground will often move just like it does during an earthquake. Scientists can also measure the gases that come out of a volcano. Most volcanoes emit gases all of the time. More gases are let out as the volcano gets closer to erupting. They can also study the way the land and water around the volcano. Scientists can read these signs and warn people of danger. They may not realize it, but their work helps to keep people safe!

**1. Read the passage and choose the best answer A, B, C or D to each question below.**

- In the passage, a volcanic eruption is compared as \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. an explosion      B. an exploration      C. a bomb      D. a danger
- \_\_\_\_\_ can come out from a volcanic eruption.  
 A. Rock      B. Lava      C. Gases      D. All above.
- \_\_\_\_\_ can study many things to predict when an eruption might happen.  
 A. Economists      B. Scientists      C. People.      D. Biologists

4. There are \_\_\_\_\_ ways for studying to estimate the time an eruption might happen.  
**A. 1                    B. 2                    C. 3                    D. 4**
5. When an eruption is going to happen, \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A. the ground moves as it does during an earthquake.  
B. the gases don't come out of it more than usual.  
C. only the water around it changes.  
D. the ground moves slowly and weakly.**

**2. Read the passage again. Decide these sentences TRUE (T) or FALSE (F)**

1. Living near a volcano is not dangerous.
2. Lava, rock and gases running down from a volcano put many lives in danger.
3. Scientists cannot predict when an eruption might happen.
4. Less gases are let out as the volcano gets closer to erupting.
5. The movements of the ground can help scientists forecast a volcanic eruption.
6. Scientists can study a volcano through the changes of land and water around it.

**Text 2. Read the text and answer the questions below.****The Day Ash Fell**

In May 1980 the sky was black. The earth shook. Mount St. Helens blew up. The heat melted snow. Snow and ash mixed. It was mud. The mud ran down the hills very fast. Many trees fell. Everything was knocked over. The mud ran into the Toutle River. The river got big. It broke things. Logs broke things. Homes floated on the river. Farm animals died. People died. The mud ruined many things. People were careful. Some people left the mountain before it blew up. They were told it would blow up. Some people did not leave. They wore masks on their noses. It kept the ash out of their lungs. It was made of small glass pieces. It could cut the lungs. The ash was moved like snow. Snow plows cleared the roads. They were set up to drive in the ash. The air filters were filled with ash. People used panty hose to cover the air filters. Soon things calmed down. The mountain was quiet. Lake water became clear. The ash sank to the bottom. Plants began to grow. Animals came back. Elk herds came back. People returned. Roads and bridges were rebuilt. A visitor's center was built. Kids go on buses to the mountain. They learn about the volcano.

**New words:**

1. Ruin (v): tàn phá, hủy hoại
2. Filter (n): thiết bị lọc, máy lọc
3. Panty hose (n): quần tất dài
4. Elk (n): nai sừng tấm
5. Herd (n): bầy, đàn (vật nuôi)

**Questions**

1. When did Mount St. Helens blow up?  
\_\_\_\_\_
2. What was mud made up of?  
\_\_\_\_\_
3. What melted the snow?  
\_\_\_\_\_
4. What was the name of the river that got bigger?  
\_\_\_\_\_
5. What did people wear to keep the ash out of their lungs?  
\_\_\_\_\_

6. What moved ash off the roads?
- 
7. Why do children go to Mount St. Helens?
- 
8. How did the lakes get clear?
- 
9. What type of mountain was talked about in this story?
- 
10. What were rebuilt when things calmed down?
- 

**Text 3. Read the passage below.**

A recent investigation by scientists at the U.S. Geological Survey shows that strange animal behavior might help predict future earthquakes. Investigators found such occurrences in a ten-kilometer radius of the epicenter of a fairly recent quake. Some birds screeched and flew about wildly: dogs yelped and ran around uncontrollably.

Scientists believe that animals can perceive these environmental changes as early as several days before the mishap.

In 1976 after observing animal behavior the Chinese were able to predict a devastating quake. Although hundreds of thousands of people were killed, the government was able to evacuate millions of other people and thus keep the death toll at a lower level.

**1. Match the words in column A to the exact definitions in column B.**

A	B
1. occurrence	a. a person who examines a situation such as an accident or a crime to find out the truth
2. radius	b. to make a loud high unpleasant sound; to say something using this sound
3. epicenter	c. in a way that you cannot control or prevent
4. to yelp	d. causing a lot of damage and destruction
5. screech	e. a small accident or piece of bad luck that does not have serious results
6. mishap	f. something that happens or exists
7. death toll	g. to give a sudden short cry, usually of pain
8. devastating	h. the central point of something
9. uncontrollably	i. the number of people killed in an accident, a war, a disaster, etc.
10. investigator	j. a straight line between the centre of a circle and any point on its outer edge; the length of this line

**Your answers:**

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.	9.	10.
----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	----	-----

**2. Read the passage again and choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D.**

1. The best title for the passage is
- A. A recent investigation about an earthquake
  - B. Some animals can predict future earthquakes
  - C. Some strange animal behavior
  - D. Dogs can predict earthquakes

2. Which can be predicted by observing animal behavior?
  - A. The number of people who were killed by an earthquake
  - B. A ten-kilometer radius of the epicenter C
  - C. The health condition of the animals
  - D. A future earthquake
3. A word with the same meaning as the word "evacuate" is:
  - A. destroy
  - B. remove
  - C. throw
  - D. migrate
4. Which sentence is not true according to the passage? became wild a
  - A. All birds in ten-kilometer radius of the epicenter became wild before a quake.
  - B. Scientists can predict earthquakes by observing animal behavior
  - C. Some animals can perceive these environmental changes several days earlier.
  - D. Some animals can sense a future earthquake.
5. What was the Chinese government able to do after predicting an earthquake thanks to observing animal behavior?
  - A. They can keep the death toll at a lower level.
  - B. Hundreds of thousands of people were saved
  - C. They can evacuate billions of other people
  - D. They control the natural disaster

## E. WRITING

### 1. Change these sentences into passive voice.

1. Vietnam sent some aid to earthquake Japanese victims in 2014.

---

2. Heinrich Hertz discovered radio waves.

---

3. People prepared enough food and wafer for a disaster.

---

4. A tornado hit many houses and buildings.

---

5. We had bought some raincoats before we heard the weather forecast.

---

6. My father is going to repair our windows tomorrow.

---

7. The earthquake damaged almost my entire house.

---

8. We should plant more trees to prevent some natural disasters.

---

9. My e-pal had told me a story about a tsunami occurring in his country.

---

10. A mechanic is going to service my car tomorrow because yesterday's storm damaged it severely.

---

### 2. Complete the table below. Think of a natural disaster and make a list of preparation for the disaster.

Name of a natural disaster	Preparation
.....	Before .....
.....	- .....

	- .....
	- .....
	During .....
	- .....
	- .....
	After .....
	- .....
	- .....
	- .....

**3. Use the information from the table in Ex 2 and write about how to prepare when a natural disaster happens. (80-100 words)**

*Your writing:*

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# UNIT 9: NATURAL DISASTERS

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

**I. Circle the words with the underlined parts pronounced differently from the others.**

- |                     |                 |                |                      |
|---------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. prepares      | B. erupts       | C. stops       | D. photographs       |
| 2. A. typhoon       | B. <u>goose</u> | C. <u>food</u> | D. <u>flood</u>      |
| 3. A. <u>looked</u> | B. suggested    | C. minded      | D. decided <u>ed</u> |
| 4. A. <u>bought</u> | B. drought      | C. brought     | D. ought             |
| 5. A. ache          | B. charity      | C. archaeology | D. chaos             |
| 6. A. bear          | B. beard        | C. wear        | D. prepare           |
| 7. A. geology       | B. psychology   | C. classify    | D. photography       |
| 8. A. physical      | B. mythology    | C. rhythmic    | D. psychology        |

**2. Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                   |                |                |              |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. erosion     | B. destruction | C. environment | D. tornado   |
| 2. A. environment | B. preparation | C. information | D. situation |
| 3. A. biology     | B. zoology     | C. geography   | D. industry  |
| 4. A. victim      | B. protect     | C. safety      | D. happen    |
| 5. A. typhoon     | B. survivor    | C. rescuer     | D. arrive    |

### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**1. Odd one out**

- |                     |                |               |                |
|---------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. disaster      | B. typhoon     | C. earthquake | D. landslide   |
| 2. A. typhoon       | B. earthquake  | C. hurricane  | D. tornado     |
| 3. A. geography     | B. biology     | C. geometry   | D. photography |
| 4. A. damage        | B. drought     | C. tsunami    | D. flood       |
| 5. A. environmental | B. documentary | C. scientific | D. government  |

**2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.**

1. When a volcano \_\_\_\_\_, hot gases and lava run down.  
 A. blows              B. erupts              C. throws              D. escapes
2. Penicillin was \_\_\_\_\_ by Alexander Fleming.  
 A. discovered              B. invented              C. created              D. explored
3. After an earthquake, many people \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ to hospital.  
 A. was injured/ taken              B. injured/ took  
 C. were injured/ taken              D. injured/ taken
4. \_\_\_\_\_ is a storm in a desert during which strong winds blow sand blow into the air.  
 A. sandstorm              B. thunderstorm              C. cyclone              D. hurricane
5. After a mudslide, authorities have confirmed five dead and a hundred of people still \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. miss              B. missed              C. misses              D. missing
6. A forest fire \_\_\_\_\_ quickly and \_\_\_\_\_ many trees.  
 A. raged/ killed              B. burst/ harmed              C. spread/ destroyed              D. occurred/ cooked
7. The tornado caused a massive \_\_\_\_\_ to the town.  
 A. destruction              B. extension              C. danger              D. mishap
8. The flood victims are being sent \_\_\_\_\_ by the government.

- |   |              |              |                |
|---|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| A. food   | B. shelter   | C. aid       | D. water       |
| 9. After the earthquake struck the city, rescuers searched for _____. |              |              |                |
| A. survivors  | B. survivals | C. surviving | D. survived    |
| 10. _____ is better than treatment.                                   |              |              |                |
| A. Prescription   | B. Medicine  | C. Practice  | D. Preparation |

**3. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words from the box.**

1. Columbus \_\_\_\_\_ the America and found the Indian. (exploration)
2. Many tourists are \_\_\_\_\_ by the mystery of Amazon rainforest. (attractive)
3. Mount Phu Si is an \_\_\_\_\_ volcano in Japan. (activity)
4. Many people \_\_\_\_\_ because of the Black Death in Europe in the past. (death)
5. Water is \_\_\_\_\_ after the flood. (contamination)
6. People \_\_\_\_\_ trees in the forest, which causes many impacts to the environment. (destruction)
7. Some plants are \_\_\_\_\_ to human and animals, but others can be used to prevent some common illness. (poison)
8. \_\_\_\_\_ team is trying to rescue some people stuck into the collapse of a house after an earthquake. (emergent)

**4. Give the correct form of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. The flood victims (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ a little better after they (eat) \_\_\_\_\_ some food and (drink) \_\_\_\_\_ some water.
2. (you/hear) \_\_\_\_\_ the earthquake which struck Japan last night?
3. I was late. The other journalists (already/arrive) \_\_\_\_\_ the city where the earthquake (strike) \_\_\_\_\_.
4. By the time the volcano (erupt) \_\_\_\_\_, people living around the root of the volcano (evacuate) \_\_\_\_\_.
5. We were going on a picnic in forest when we (see) \_\_\_\_\_ a wildfire.
6. When I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ that someone was stuck into a collapse of a building after an earthquake, I (help) \_\_\_\_\_ them. He (be) \_\_\_\_\_ very appreciative.
7. Yesterday my parents (take) \_\_\_\_\_ me to the zoo. Afterward I (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ a lot about nature.
8. I (have) \_\_\_\_\_ a cup of tea before I (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ for my office.

**5. Choose the correct answer A, B, or C to complete the passage below.**

A (1)\_\_\_\_\_ is defined as being an uncontrolled fire that occurs in the wilderness. They can be massive in size and have the ability (2)\_\_\_\_\_ across vast distances, jumping rivers, roads and fire breaks in the process. Usually, wildfires occur in hot and (3)\_\_\_\_\_ climates during the (4)\_\_\_\_\_ months of spring and summer. (5)\_\_\_\_\_ average, there are a reported 60,000 to 80,000 wildfires each year, and 3 million to 10 millions acres of green land are (6)\_\_\_\_\_ in their wake. Wildfires can have different effects 1 on the environment depending on their size and frequency.

- |                   |               |                |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. wildfire    | B. fire       | C. heat wave   |
| 2. A. spread      | B. to spread  | C. spreading   |
| 3. A. wet         | B. dry        | C. sunny       |
| 4. A. the hottest | B. hotter     | C. hottest     |
| 5. A. At          | B. On         | C. In          |
| 6. A. destroyed   | B. destroying | C. destructive |

**C. SPEAKING**

**1. Complete the table using some suggestions. Then choose some of earthquake impacts and talk about them to your partner. Use some passive voice in your speaking. (use future simple tense and modal verb)**

***Social impacts***

- People/kill/injure

Many people are killed or injured

- Homes/ destroy

- Transport and communication links/ disrupt

- Water supplies/ contaminate

- Disease/ spread

***Economic impacts***

- Shops and business/ destroy

- Looting/ take place.

- The damage to transport and communication links/ make trade/ difficult

- The cost/ rebuilding/ a settlement/ high.

***Environmental impacts***

- The built landscapes/ destroy

- Fires/ spread/ due to/ gas pipe explosions

- Fires/ damage/ areas/ woodland

- Landslides/ occur.

- Tsunamis/ cause/ flooding/ coastal areas

- Important natural and human landmarks/ may/ lost

**D. READING**

**Text 1**

**Hurricanes**

A hurricane is a huge storm that forms over warm ocean water. Bands of thunderstorms form and swirl around and around because the rotation of the earth. As more and more thunderstorms form, the hurricane gets bigger and bigger. A hurricane is one of the world's worst storms because it can last for days or weeks.

Hurricanes can also be very large. They may cover hundreds of miles and affect large areas of land. For a storm to be classified as a hurricane, wind speeds within the storm have to reach at least 74 per hour. But hurricane winds can reach speeds of over 155 miles per hour! A large amount of destruction may occur with winds that strong. Roofs may be torn off homes. Buildings may be flattened. Trees topple over. Hurricanes are

deadly, but not just because of their winds. They can also produce very heavy rains and huge waves that slam into the coastline. Hurricanes are very common along the east coast of the United States. Here, wind, waves, and rain do the most damage.

Luckily, meteorologists (people who study weather) can forecast hurricanes days in advance by using radar technology. Radar is a little bit like a moving picture. It shows how big storms are and which way they are moving. Radar images people time to prepare for a coming storm. If the storm is very strong, home and business owners will put up plywood to protect their glass windows and doors. People who live along the coast will evacuate. They'll go to a hurricane shelter or stay with friends and relatives who live in safer places farther inland. Many lives are saved every year by people who take the necessary precautions.

**Questions:**

1. What is a hurricane?  
 A. a tidal wave      B. a huge storm      C. a thunderstorm      D. a tsunami
2. What makes a hurricane?  
 A. thunderstorms      B. strong winds      C. seawater      D. the earth rotation
3. What of the following is not correct?  
 A. A hurricane is very dangerous because it lasts for days and weeks.  
 B. The hurricane wind speeds per hour can be nearly twice as fast as the wind speeds.  
 C. A hurricane can reach speeds of at least 74 km per hour.  
 D. Hurricanes often appear along the east coast of the United States.
4. Who is meteorologist?  
 A. People study weather.  
 B. People do businesses in the meteorological field.  
 C. People live along the coast.  
 D. People are evacuated from the regions affected by hurricanes.
5. What is radar used for?  
 A. making moving pictures  
 B. showing the size of hurricanes and their movements  
 C. giving people time to prepare for a coming storm  
 D. All above

**Text 2. Read the text. Then answer the questions.**

The first people who gave names to hurricanes were those who knew them the people in Puerto Rico. The small island of Puerto is in the west India, off the coast of Florida. This is where all the hurricanes begin that strike the east of the United States. The people of Puerto Rico expect some of these unwelcome visitors every year. Each one is named after the Saint's Day on which it arrives. Two of most serious storms were the San Carioca in 1899 and the Santa Aha in 1925.

Giving girl's names to hurricanes is a fairly new idea. It all began with the story called "storm" written by George Steward in 1941. In it weatherman enjoyed himself by naming storms after girls he knew. He named one Maria. The story described how Maria grew and developed, and how she changed the lives of people when she struck the United States. Weathermen of the U.S Army and Navy used the system during World War II. One of their duties was to warn American ships and planes when a storm was coming.

Whenever they stopped one, they gave it a girl's name. The first one was given a nature beginning with A. The second, one got a name beginning with B. They used all the letters from A to W. This was the first of hurricane names that followed the alphabet.

**Questions:**

1. Who is the first to give names to hurricanes?

2. Where do all the hurricanes begin that strike the east of the United States?

---

3. Why is a hurricane named after the Saint's Day?

---

4. Who began the idea of giving girls' name to hurricanes?

---

5. What did the story "storm" describe?

---

6. What was one of the duties of the weathermen?

---

## E. WRITING

### 1. Fill in the gaps to complete the passage below.

When the frequency of wildfires in a particular region is too much, it may have a (1)\_\_\_\_\_ impact on the ecosystem. (2)\_\_\_\_\_, frequent wildfires will disrupt the (3)\_\_\_\_ cycles of these forests by eradicating native plant species and (4)\_\_\_\_ the growth of (5)\_\_\_\_ plants and other invasive plant species. Wildfires can exacerbate levels of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, thereby (6)\_\_\_\_\_ the (7)\_\_\_\_\_ effect that is already plaguing our earth. Further, wildfires generate ash and forests available plant (8)\_\_\_\_, thereby greatly effecting the (9)\_\_\_\_ of forests. With an increase in water runoff, wildfires can engender flash flood conditions and enable soil (10)\_\_\_\_\_.

- |                      |                  |                   |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. devastate      | B. devastating   | C. devastation    |
| 2. A. For example    | B. Therefore     | C. However        |
| 3. A. nature         | B. native        | C. natural        |
| 4. A. encouraging    | B. encourage     | C. encourages     |
| 5. A. fire-resisting | B. fire-resisted | C. fire-resistant |
| 6. A. strengthening  | B. strong        | C. strength       |
| 7. A. green houses   | B. greenhouse    | C. green house    |
| 8. A. nutrition      | B. nutrients     | C. . nutritious   |
| 9. A. biodiversity   | B. diverse       | C. diversity      |
| 10. A. erode         | B. erosive       | C. erosion        |

### 2. Think about a natural disaster and write about its effects.

#### Some suggestions:

What is the definition of the disaster?

What are the effects of the disaster (at least 2 effects)?

How do people prepare for the disaster? (at least 2 ways of preparation)

#### Your writing:

---



---



---



---

**WRITTEN TEST 3****A. PHONETICS****1. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                   |               |              |             |
|-------------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. A. hurricane   | B. tornado    | C. volcano   | D. eruption |
| 2. A. terrific    | B. arabic     | C. statistic | D. cosmetic |
| 3. A. referee     | B. guarantee  | C. Japanese  | D. jubilee  |
| 4. A. classical   | B. electronic | C. logical   | D. politic  |
| 5. A. nationality | B. mobility   | C. equality  | D. majority |

**B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY****1. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D for each sentence.**

1. We \_\_\_\_\_ from different kinds of pollution: water air, soil and noise.  
 A. is suffering      B. suffer      C. are suffering      D. had suffered
2. The babies \_\_\_\_\_ when Alice came.  
 A. has slept      B. have slept      C. is sleeping      D. were sleeping
3. America \_\_\_\_\_ Thanksgiving Day on the fourth Thursday of November since 1864.  
 A. celebrates      B. has celebrated      C. is celebrating      D. celebrated
4. The fish died massively because the water is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. damaged      B. hotter      C. contaminated      D. poison
5. A natural disaster can cause loss of life or \_\_\_\_\_ damage.  
 A. property      B. house      C. home      D. money
6. \_\_\_\_\_ are severe winter storms characterized by heavy snow and strong winds.  
 A. Droughts      B. Blizzards      C. Hailstorms      D. Volcanic eruptions
7. The \_\_\_\_\_ can be controlled by the stoppage of leakage from the radioactive materials including the nuclear reactors, industries and laboratories.  
 A. light pollution      B. visual pollution      C. air pollution      D. radioactive pollution
8. English is \_\_\_\_\_ of Australia and Singapore.  
 A. native language      B. both A and C      C. official language      D. second language
9. Australia has the biggest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world.  
 A. natural beauty      B. puzzling games      C. cattle station      D. tallest building
10. \_\_\_\_\_ could possibly be avoided by better construction, safety systems, early warning and planning.  
 A. Earthquakes      B. mudslide      C. droughts      D. forest fire

**2. Complete the sentence with correct form of the verb.**

1. We (save)\_\_\_\_\_ thousands of trees if we (not waste)\_\_\_\_\_ paper.
2. The storm destroyed the sandcastle that we (build)\_\_\_\_\_.
3. Thousands of house (damage)\_\_\_\_\_ by the storm last night.
4. Jim crashed into another car because he (not/ realise)\_\_\_\_\_ the red traffic light.
5. If we (have)\_\_\_\_\_ a yacht, we would sail the seven seas.
6. If I lived on a lonely island, I (run)\_\_\_\_\_ around naked all day.

**C. READING****1. Read the text then answer the questions below.**

ALES

## Language

Wales is a country with two languages: Welsh and English. Welsh is spoken by around 20% of the population. Although the north west has the highest ratio of Welsh to English speakers, a greater number of Welsh speakers live in the more populous south. Most areas are far from completely Anglicised, and the language is strong across Wales.

There are several dialects of Welsh, most notably north and south. The road signs are bilingual, giving both the Welsh and English versions of the text and place names.

The Welsh language continues to flourish within Wales thanks to Welsh-medium education, a lively media industry and the enthusiasm of people living in Wales. The rights of the language have also been helped by bilingual and language policies made law by the Government.

## Symbols

The daffodil and the leek are national flowers of Wales. One species of daffodil is found only in a small area around Tenby.

According to legend, Saint David ordered his Welsh soldiers to identify themselves by wearing leeks on their helmets in an ancient battle against the Saxons that took place in a leek field. This may be a myth, but the vegetable certainly has enjoyed a lengthy association with the country. In Henry V, Shakespeare refers to wearing one as an "ancient tradition", and in the same play Henry tells Fluellen he is wearing a leek, "for I am Welsh, you know, good countryman".

## New words

*Anglicise (v): Anh hóa*

*Dialect (n): tiêng địa phương, thổ ngữ*

*Audibly (adv): rõ ràng*

*Bilingual (adj): thông thạo 2 thứ tiếng*

1. How many languages are spoken in Wales? What are they?

---

2. Which areas in Wales have the highest ratio of Welsh to English speak?

---

3. What language is used in the road signs?

---

4. What are national flowers of Wales?

---

5. Why leek is the symbol of Wales?

---

## 2. Read the text and choose the correct answers.

In the United States and Canada, for example, a simple handshake or nod is the norm. The handshake has an interesting origin: it started long ago as a way of showing people that you weren't carrying a weapon. Shaking the person's right hand while looking him or her in the eye is the usual method. Handshakes are also common in other parts of the world, including Britain and Russia. In Russia, males grasp other men's hands very strongly during the handshake. Handshakes are also how most people in New Zealand greet each other. However, the native Maori people of that country display more physical contact: they press their noses together in a sign of trust and closeness.

In other countries, such as France and Belgium, hugging and kissing are more common when two people meet. In those cultures, people kiss each other on the cheeks. The number of times varies depending on the particular country. In Saudi Arabia, men might hug and kiss each other (but not a woman) on the cheek. Men will also shake hands with other men there. In some Eastern countries, including Korea and Japan, bowing is the traditional greeting. In Japan, the deeper the bow, the deeper the respect shown. The strangest custom, though, is likely in Tibet. People there opt to stick out their tongue to greet others.

1. What is this reading mainly about?
  - A. The importance of handshakes all around the world.
  - B. The origins and histories of various greetings.
  - C. The strangest types of greetings on Earth.
  - D. The wide range of greeting customs in the world.
  
2. Which of the following is true?
  - A. People in Russia, but not England, shake hands.
  - B. The number of times people kiss on the cheek varies.
  - C. In the past, people nodded if they weren't carrying a weapon.
  - D. You shouldn't look at people when shaking their hands in the United States.
  
3. How do most people in New Zealand greet each other?
 

A. With a handshake.	B. By pressing noses together
C. With a kiss on the cheek.	D. By sticking out their tongues.
  
4. Which country is NOT mentioned in the reading?
 

A. America.	B. New Zealand	C. France	D. Malaysia
-------------	----------------	-----------	-------------
  
5. What can be inferred about greeting customs in Saudi Arabia?
  - A. Men shake hands with women when meeting them for the first time.
  - B. It's not proper for men to kiss women when they meet.
  - C. Women do not kiss other women when they meet.
  - D. Women can kiss men, but men can't kiss women when they meet.

## **D. WRITING**

### **1. Reorder the words to make meaningful sentence.**

1. the/ temperature/ is/ one/ degree/ today/ higher/ yesterday/ than/.

---

2. English/ an/ in/ official/ is/ language/ Singapore/.

---

3. The USA,/ the/ Kingdom/ and/ United/ New Zealand/ are/ English/ all/ countries/ speaking/.

---

4. What/ you/ do/ about/ like/ Scotland?

---

5. Aquatic/ may/ also/ plants/ die/ of/ the/ polluted/ because/ water/.

---

### **2. Rewrite the sentences using the word given in brackets**

1. I can't understand him because he speaks so quickly. (if)

---

2. Smoke from mills, factories and industry can cause health problems like asthma and lung diseases. (lead)

---

3. We don't trust Lan because she behaves badly. (because of)

---

4. Although he took a taxi, he still arrived late for school. (in spite of)

---

## **E. SPEAKING**

**Choose ONE among three topics below then talk about it in 2 minutes.**

**Topic 1:**

- a) How many kinds of pollution do you know?  
Talk about cause, effect of one kind.
- b) What have you done to reduce the pollution in your neighborhood and your school?

**Topic 2:**

- a) Talk about one English speaking country you know?
- b) Do you want to go to an English speaking country to study/ live? Why?

**Topic 3:**

- a) How many kinds of natural disasters do you know?
- b) Talk about one natural disaster that you have experienced.  
What experience do you have from that natural disaster?

# UNIT 10: COMMUNICATION

## A. PHONETICS

### 1. Complete the following words with -ity or -tive, and then say them aloud.

1. activ _____	9. opportun _____
2. positi_____	10. interac_____
3. possibil_____	11. qual_____
4. repeti_____	12. talka_____
5. competi_____	13. sensi_____
6. ac_____	14. attrac_____
7. national_____	15. creativ_____
8. commun_____	16. generos_____

### 2. Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.

- |                   |                |               |                  |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. A. sensitive   | B. active      | C. attractive | D. talkative     |
| 2. A. community   | B. activity    | C. quality    | D. character     |
| 3. A. nationality | B. opportunity | C. creativity | D. communication |
| 4. A. express     | B. practice    | C. describe   | D. decide        |
| 5. A. language    | B. conference  | C. understand | D. message       |

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

### 1. Choose the best answer A, B, C, or D to complete these sentences below.

1. We took part in a lot of interesting \_\_\_\_\_ to make acquaintance with each other in the chat room.  
 A. communities      B. activities      C. conferences      D. contests
2. The sign language provides the deaf more \_\_\_\_\_ to communicate with those who are deaf or hard of hearing.  
 A. options      B. opportunities      C. situations      D. activities
3. In presentation, presenters should use their body language such as hand gesture, eye contact to communicate with the audience \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. effective      B. effectively      C. more effective      D. more effectively
4. Nowadays, our country creates more \_\_\_ products to persuade customers from other countries to buy.  
 A. competitive      B. expensive      C. luxurious      D. beautiful
5. Try to think \_\_\_\_\_ about troubles that you may get into in your life.  
 A. negative      B. positive      C. negatively      D. positively
6. The portable wireless devices or Readers will be paper thin, flexible and have wireless \_\_\_\_ in the future.  
 A. usages      B. connections      C. Wi Fi      D. techniques
7. Recent advancements in 3D virtual imaging and scanning technologies are making your “virtual presence” a real \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. possibility      B. creativity      C. quality      D. identify
8. The future will bring a slew of new products that will change the way we \_\_\_\_\_ with each other and with machines.  
 A. communicated      B. communicating      C. communication      D. communicate
9. Which one is not correct to fill in the blank?  
 Hand gestures is a type of \_\_\_\_\_ which make people listen to you.  
 A. verbal communication      B. body language

**C. sign language****D. non-verbal communication**

10. With mobile \_\_\_\_\_, devices with solar power can be put in relatively remote locations, or can be free to roam.
- A. phones      B. connectivity      C. vehicles      D. equipment

**2. Circle the one out.**

- |                   |                |               |                |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. interactive | B. perspective | C. talkative  | D. competitive |
| 2. A. Germany     | B. English     | C. Portuguese | D. Russian     |
| 3. A. email       | B. message     | C. video chat | D. letter      |
| 4. A. painting    | B. chatting    | C. texting    | D. singing     |
| 5. A. smiling     | B. painting    | C. dancing    | D. chatting    |

**3. Fill in the blank with the words from the box to complete the sentences.**

<i>facial expression</i>	<i>Emails</i>	<i>face-to-face meeting</i>	<i>letters</i>
<i>body language</i>	<i>Texting</i>	<i>video chat</i>	<i>signs</i>

- Teenagers often use abbreviations when \_\_\_\_\_ to save time.
- People who cannot hear or speak often communicate with each other by using \_\_\_\_\_.
- In a \_\_\_\_\_, people communicate directly to each other.
- Using \_\_\_\_\_ during your talk is an effective way to attract more people's attention.
- In the past, people who live far away used to write \_\_\_\_\_ to keep touch with their relatives or their family.
- \_\_\_\_\_ helps people connect to each other in such a quick and cheap way.
- Smiling and blinking your eyes are examples of \_\_\_\_\_.
- Since the appearance of the Internet, people have been able to send \_\_\_\_\_ to contact with people from any countries in the world.

**4. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verb in the brackets.**

- Do you enjoy (write) \_\_\_\_\_ letters to your friends?
- He has decided (install) \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet to look for information more easily.
- She intends (participate) \_\_\_\_\_ in the program called "The survivor" to experience the life in an isolated island.
- We'll need (bring) \_\_\_\_\_ more food and drinks for the trip.
- You should avoid (spend) \_\_\_\_\_ much time (play) \_\_\_\_\_ computer games because you can lose your skills to communicate with people face to face.
- He plans (book) \_\_\_\_\_ an appointment with the doctor. He needs (examine) \_\_\_\_\_ his health.
- Our teacher didn't mind (explain) \_\_\_\_\_ the exercise until we understood it yesterday.
- Peter denied (steal) \_\_\_\_\_ that mobile phone.

**5. Complete the text with the past simple, present continuous or future continuous.**

- It (be) \_\_\_\_\_ expensive to make a phone call in a long distance 10 year ago.
- Nowadays, emails and video chat (help) \_\_\_\_\_ people to contact to each other easily and inexpensively.
- By this time tomorrow, I (learn) \_\_\_\_\_ Japanese at Language Center.
- When I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ young, I and my friend (write) \_\_\_\_\_ letters to each other so that we could keep in touch.
- In 20 years I think I (talk) \_\_\_\_\_ to my children by telegraph and holograph when they live far away from home.

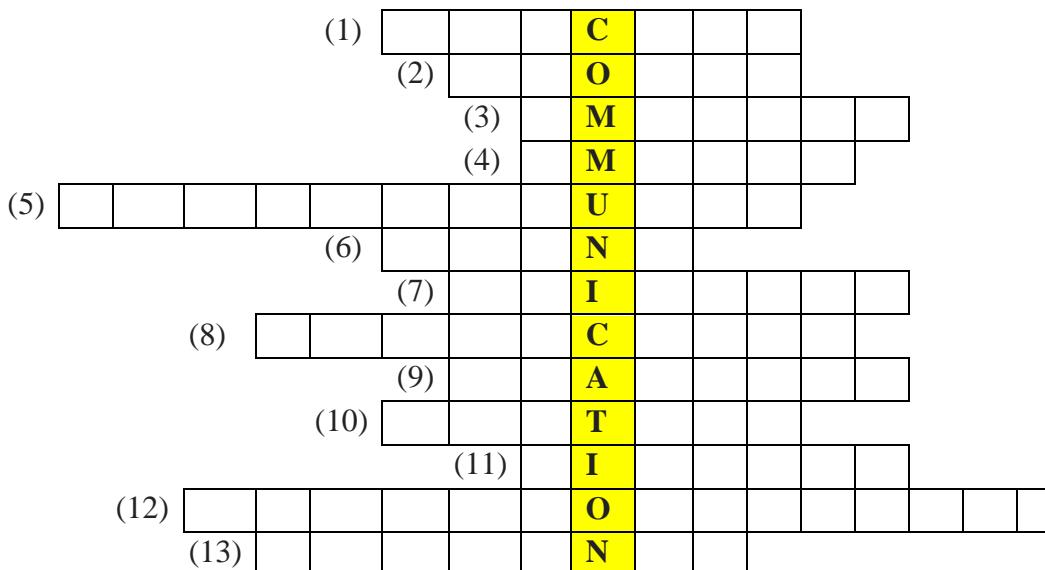
6. Last night I (make) \_\_\_\_\_ several phone calls to her, but she (not answer) \_\_\_\_\_. Now I (be) \_\_\_\_\_. worried about her.
7. In the year 2020, they (invent) \_\_\_\_\_ some devices to help people who cannot hear or speak to communicate through their mind.
8. She (plan) \_\_\_\_\_ to have an outing with her family this Sunday.

#### 6. Choose the correct answer to each blank to complete the passage.

Today, computer companies sell many (1) \_\_\_\_\_ programs for computers. First, there are programs (2) \_\_\_\_\_ math problems. Second, there are (3) \_\_\_\_\_ for scientific studies. Third, some programs are (4) \_\_\_\_\_ fancy typewriters. They are often (5) \_\_\_\_\_ by writers and business people. Other programs are made for courses in schools and universities. And (6) \_\_\_\_\_ there are programs for fun. These (7) \_\_\_\_\_ word games and puzzles (8) \_\_\_\_\_ children and adults.

- |                 |               |                |               |
|-----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. differ    | B. different  | C. differently | D. difference |
| 2. A. do        | B. doing      | C. for doing   | D. to doing   |
| 3. A. companies | B. programs   | C. computers   | D. problems   |
| 4. A. like      | B. as         | C. so          | D. same       |
| 5. A. use       | B. used       | C. using       | D. used to    |
| 6. A. next      | B. after that | C. however     | D. finally    |
| 7. A. include   | B. connect    | C. restrict    | D. concern    |
| 8. A. of        | B. for        | C. about       | D. to         |

#### 7. Solve the crossword puzzle.



1. (7 letters) a kind of non-verbal communication, using the movement of your body with music
2. (6 letters) a kind of non-verbal communication, using cameras to save beautiful and memorable moments
3. (7 letters) a kind of non-verbal communication, expressing you are happy in your face
4. (6 letters) a kind of verbal communication, meaning messages through the Internet
5. (12 letters) a kind of non-verbal communication, using the movement of your body to tell something
6. (5 letters) a kind of non-verbal communication, using some symbols to communicate with other secretly
7. (8 letters) a kind of non-verbal communication, using colors, brushes to draw pictures
8. (10 letters) a kind of verbal communication, using mobile phones or telephones to communicate with other people

9. (8 letters) a kind of verbal communication, using messages to talk online
10. (7 letters) a kind of verbal communication, writing your feelings or what you want to tell somebody in paper and sending them to others thanks to postmen
11. (7 letters) a kind of verbal communication, using songs and music to talk to someone
12. (16 letters) a kind of verbal communication, important meetings using webcams to discuss something together
13. (7 letters) a kind of verbal communication, writing messages by using phones or computers

**8. Find an antonym (an opposite adjective) to each adjective given in the table by adding a prefix "in" or "un". Then write the noun form of these adjectives. The first one is done for you.**

Adjectives	Antonyms	Nouns
0. active	Inactive	activity
1. competitive		
2. imaginative		
3. sensitive		
4. creative		
5. productive		
6. expensive		
7. effective		
8. attractive		

### C. SPEAKING

**1. Match the sentences in column A with the sentences in column B to make mini- dialogues. Then practice it to your partner.**

1. In Japan, there are some taboos that can be considered insult to the Japanese.	a. Why don't you attend some Skype classes with foreigners? It is suitable for your time.
2. She has got a new job. Should we buy some flowers to congratulate him?	b. Well, just use non-verbal messages such as emails or texting.
3. I don't know how to use a video chat.	c. Let's learn and practice some customs and traditions in Japan.
4. I don't have chance to communicate with foreigners to practice English..	d. You had better learn sign language to communicate with them easily.
5. I don't know how to talk with the dead.	e. Yes, we should buy some orange or purple flowers to her.

**Your answers:**

1-	2-	3-	4-	5-
----	----	----	----	----

**2. Choose one way of communicating to make friends which you like best. Talk about it and explain the reasons why you like it.**

1. Write letters
2. Talk to each other in face to face meetings or chat rooms
3. Chat by texting
4. Write emails
5. Video chat

### D. READING

**1. Read the following passage and choose the item (a, b, c, or d) that best answers each of the questions about it.**

Is computer shopping the way of the future? About 37% of American households now have personal computers. And shopping by computer (or “shopping on-line”) is interesting to more people every day. Already, shoppers I can use **their** computers to order many different products, such as computer products, flowers, food, T-shirts, and posters. And new online shopping services **appear** every day. Soon people may be able to shop for anything, anytime, anywhere in the world.

**Questions:**

1. What is the passage written about?
 

A. Computer shopping	B. Personal computer
C. The future in America	D. Shopping
2. What does the word "their" in line 4 refer to?
 

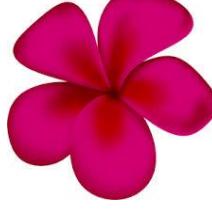
A. people	B. shoppers	C. households	D. personal computers
-----------	-------------	---------------	-----------------------
3. Shoppers can buy \_\_\_\_\_ by computer.
 

A. many different products	B. anything
C. food	D. A&C
4. What does the word "appear" in the sentence “new online shopping services appear every day” mean?
 

A. become available for the first time	B. be bought
C. be sold	D. arrive somewhere
5. Which of the following is not true?
 

A. About 63% of American households don't have personal computers now.	B. Now many people find it interesting to shop by computer
C. "Shopping by computer" is also called as "shopping on-line".	D. Nowadays, it is certain that people can buy anything, anytime, anywhere by computer.

**2. Read the passage below.**

Blue Flowers	Red Flowers	Pink Flowers	Yellow Flowers
			
The pale blue or the deep blues can represent peace, openness, and serenity.	There's an indisputable energy to the color red - an energy that has the power to transform an otherwise unassuming flower into the essence of desire, strength, and passionate love.	Regardless of the shape of the flower, pink blossoms convey youth, innocence, and joy.	The color yellow evokes feelings of lightheartedness. Also a symbol of friendship, a bouquet bursting with yellow blooms sends a message of new beginnings and happiness.
Purple Flowers	White Flowers	Orange Flowers	Green Flowers
			

With its origins tied to royalty and ceremony, purple flowers represent dignity, pride and success.	Often associated with innocence, humility, and reverence, white flowers evoke simple beauty. White blossoms also convey modesty and elegance.	The orange flowers are a gift of thanks in repayment for understanding and are given as a gesture of heartfelt sincerity.	Synonymous with nature-and the perfect complement to any other bloom - the color green represents health, resilience, good fortune and youth.
---	---	---	---

**1. Complete the table about meanings of flower colors with the information from the passage. Write no more than four words.**

Flower Colors	Meanings
Blue	
Pink	
Purple	
Red	
Yellow	
White	
Orange	
Green	

**2. Write the colour(s) of flowers which can be chosen for the following situations. Explain your answers.**

1. Your relative was currently in hospital. You want to buy flowers with the meaning "get well soon".

**Your choice:**

**Your explanations:**

---

2. You are going to your cousin's wedding. You want to buy some flowers to say "congratulation on your wedding":

**Your choice:**

**Your explanations:**

---

3. Your pen friend gets 10 marks for her math final test. You want to send her some flowers to say "well done"

**Your choice:**

**Your explanations:**

---

4. Your friend has just failed an exam. He is very upset now. You want to make him happy by giving him some flowers to say "cheer up".

**Your choice:**

**Your explanations:**

---

5. On Valentine's Day, you want to give your girlfriend a bunch of flowers to say "I love you".

**Your choice:**

**Your explanations:**

---

6. Your son is a manager in a big company. He has just succeeded in signing an important contract and gained a lot of money. You want to say "Congratulation on your success".

**Your choice:**

**Your explanations:**

---

7. Your sister have just given birth to her first child. You want to congratulation with her joy and happiness.

**Your choice:**

**Your explanations:**

---

8. It is the first time you have had an appointment with your pen-friend. You want to express your openness to him/ her.

**Your choice:**

**Your explanations:**

---

### 3. Read the text then do the tasks below.

If you've been joining in chat room conversations, or trading e-mail with net pals, you have become one of the millions who write in a special, short form of English.

Throughout the world, every night children and their elders "talking" online many of them are talking at the same time.

It's fast: trying talking to six people at once. It's convenient: three or four words per exchange. It takes cleverness, concentration and quick fingers.

And it requires very simple language. There's neither time nor space for explanations. Why waste precious key-strokes telling six friends you have to leave for a moment to take care of your little brother when BRB (= be right back) will do?

Want to enter a conversation? Just type PMFJI (= pardon me for jumping in).

Interested in whom you're talking to? Type A/S/L, the common request to know your pal's age, sex and location. You may get 15/M/NY as a reply from your pal.

If something makes you laugh, say you're OTF (= on the floor), or LOL (= laughing out loud), or join the two into ROTFL (= rolling on the floor laughing).

And when it's time to get back to work or go to bed, you type GTG (= got to go) or TTYL (= talk to you later).

People want to write as fast as possible, and they want to get their ideas across as quickly as they can. Capital letters are left in the dust, except when expressing feelings, as it takes more time to hold down the "shift" key and use capitals. Punctuation is going, too.

#### 1. Complete the table with the information about abbreviations in texting from the text.

Short forms	Long forms
BRB	
PMFJI	
A/S/L	
15/M/NY	
OTF	

LOL	
ROFL	
GTG	
TTYL	

**2. Answer the questions.**

1. Why is "talking" online fast?

2. Why is "talking" online convenient?

3. What does "talking" online with many people at the same time require?

4. When is BRB used?

5. What is PMFJI used for?

6. What do you type when you find something funny and it make you laugh?

7. When do you use TTYL?

8. Why is not Capitals used commonly apart from showing emotion?

**E. WRITING****1. These sentences are texting shorthand. Can you rewrite these sentences to original ones?**

1. I'll b 5 mins late.

2. W8 4 me a min.

3. Wot r u doing this wkd?

4. How r u 2day?

5. I'll b rite back.

6. CUS

7. C u 2morrow

8. Y do u do that?

9. Thx 4 the gift.

10. OMG!

**2. Rewrite the sentences as long as keep the similar meaning to the original one.**

1. People spent more time communicating with each other in the past.  
It took \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. He used to write letters to keep in touch with her when he lived far from her.  
Letters used to \_\_\_\_\_.
  3. How long has that phone been used by our teacher?  
When \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  4. How about going on a picnic this weekend?  
Why don't we \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  5. He suggested watching a comedy.  
"Let's \_\_\_\_\_" he said.
  6. His friend suggested he should go to bed after taking some medicine.  
"Why don't \_\_\_\_\_?" said his friend.
  7. Let's eat out and go to the amusement park.  
What about \_\_\_\_\_ ?
  8. Although the weather was bad, the football match was not cancelled.  
Despite \_\_\_\_\_ .

### **3. Choose one of these topics below:**

- a. Write a mobile phone text message to invite him/her to your birthday weekend.
  - b. Write an email to introduce yourself and make friends with a foreigner.
  - c. Write a short online post about best food to eat when visiting Vietnam to introduce for foreigners.

## Your writing:

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

# UNIT 10: COMMUNICATION

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Choose the word marked A, B, C, or D that the underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.**

- |                     |                      |                |                        |
|---------------------|----------------------|----------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. community     | B. sensit <u>ive</u> | C. variety     | D. <u>inter</u> active |
| 2. A. connect       | B. perfect           | C. select      | D. cor <u>rect</u>     |
| 3. A. <u>verbal</u> | B. customer          | C. generous    | D. after <u>noon</u>   |
| 4. A. connection    | B. creation          | C. information | D. suggestion          |
| 5. A. <u>table</u>  | B. climb <u>b</u>    | C. cube        | D. stab <u>b</u>       |

**2. Choose the answer that has a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |                      |                |                |                  |
|----------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. situation      | B. environment | C. community   | D. immediate     |
| 2. A. intrusive      | B. connection  | C. customer    | D. dramatic      |
| 3. A. implementation | B. generosity  | C. possibility | D. automatically |
| 4. A. entertainment  | B. population  | C. innovative  | D. temporary     |
| 5. A. numerous       | B. industry    | C. portable    | D. variety       |
| 6. A. economy        | B. economic    | C. industrial  | D. committee     |

### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.**

1. I don't know how we can \_\_\_\_\_ with her. She's too far away.  
 A. keep in touch      B. cope      C. catch up      D. keep pace
2. He don't understand the instruction on this website, so he have to use \_\_\_\_\_ messages.  
 A. instant      B. online      C. non-verbal      D. verbal
3. She don't have the doctor's telephone number to book a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ with him.  
 A. ticket      B. appointment      C. lunch set      D. seat
4. Sending letters by post office has become \_\_\_\_\_ today, in comparison to email.  
 A. more popular      B. popular      C. much popularer      D. less popular
5. \_\_\_\_\_, dancing and painting are examples of non-verbal communication.  
 A. chatting      B. smiling      C. singing      D. emailing
6. Using \_\_\_\_\_ in presentation is very important to make your speech more attractive.  
 A. body language      B. poems      C. sign language      D. music

**2. Give the correct form of verbs in the brackets.**

1. At 8 a m tomorrow, he (video chat)\_\_\_\_\_ with his friends in America.
2. Listen! Our teacher (try)\_\_\_\_\_ to explain very important knowledge.
3. Thanks for your invitation to your party tomorrow, but I (work)\_\_\_\_\_ all day tomorrow.
4. It (take)\_\_\_\_\_ people a lot of time to send a letter to those who live far away ten years ago.
5. In the next 15 years, people (communicate)\_\_\_\_\_ with each other by glasses.
6. Which TV programme (you/watch)\_\_\_\_\_ at 1 p m tomorrow?
7. When she comes to class late today, the teacher (write)\_\_\_\_\_ a lot of things the board.
8. In the year 2030, they (control)\_\_\_\_\_ their phone calls by their mind.
9. When I (be)\_\_\_\_\_ small, we (keep)\_\_\_\_\_ in touch with our relatives by writing letters.
10. She (always/ make)\_\_\_\_\_ silly mistakes in spellings when she write emails.

**3. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the words in the brackets.**

1. Our coffee is a very \_\_\_\_\_ products in the international market due to the high quality and the reasonable price. (competition)
2. We both admired his \_\_\_\_\_ in helping other people. (generous)
3. The dress was \_\_\_\_\_, so I did not have a look on it. (attract)
4. He \_\_\_\_\_ with most of the people in last night's face-to-face meeting. He was so talkative. (communication)
5. They were very surprised when they knew his \_\_\_\_\_. (nation)
6. He is so \_\_\_\_\_ to his community because he never misses an opportunity to help people. (activity) I
7. In addition to hand gestures, facial \_\_\_\_\_ also belongs to non-verbal communication. (express)
8. Despite the \_\_\_\_\_ of chatting online, we will still be using face-to-face meetings to communicate with each other in the year 2050. (popular)

**4. Choose the word (A, B, C, or D) that best fits each of the blank spaces.**

Not so long ago, people only used the (1)\_\_\_\_\_ to make phone calls. Now, thanks to computers, people use their phones (2)\_\_\_\_\_ much more. They can bank by phone, rent videos (3)\_\_\_\_\_ phone, and even shop by phone. It is also possible (4)\_\_\_\_\_ letters and reports by faxing them over telephone lines. People can even use their phone lines to (5)\_\_\_\_\_ messages from one computer to another computer by (6)\_\_\_\_\_ mail, or e-mail.

- |                    |               |             |               |
|--------------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. A. fax machine. | B. telephone  | C. computer | D. dishwasher |
| 2. A. do           | B. doing      | C. to do    | D. to doing   |
| 3. A. with         | B. by         | C. in       | D. at         |
| 4. A. send         | B. sending    | C. to send  | D. to sending |
| 5. A. take         | B. leave      | C. send     | D. write      |
| 6. A. electricity  | B. electrical | C. electric | D. electronic |

**5. Choose the correct answer to complete the passage.**

Telephone, television, radio, and the Internet help people (1)\_\_\_\_\_ with each other. (2)\_\_\_\_\_ these devices, ideas and news of events spread (3)\_\_\_\_\_ all over the world. For example, within seconds, people can know the results of an (4)\_\_\_\_\_ in another country. An (5)\_\_\_\_\_ football match comes into the homes of everyone with a television set. News of a disaster, such as a flood, can bring help from (6)\_\_\_\_\_ countries. Within hours, help is on the way. This is because modern (7)\_\_\_\_\_ information travels fast.

- |                   |                  |                   |              |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|--------------|
| 1. A. communicate | B. communicating | C. to communicate | D. A&C       |
| 2. A. Although    | B. Because of    | C. Despite        | D. Because   |
| 3. A. quickly     | B. quick         | C. slowly         | D. slow      |
| 4. A. electing    | B. elective      | C. election       | D. elected   |
| 5. A. rural       | B. international | C. nation         | D. urban     |
| 6. A. close       | B. space         | C. distant        | D. rich      |
| 7. A. technology  | B. technological | C. technique      | D. technical |

**C. SPEAKING**

1. This is the alphabet for American Sign Language. Practice making these signs with your hand. Use the sign language above to spell English words to partner.

**SIGN LANGUAGE**

## 2. Work with your partner. Discuss the following questions.

1. What ways of communication do you think will be used in the future?
2. Describe the communication in the future. Do you like it? Why or why not?
  - name: KID, MARS...
  - features: appearance, weight, colors...
  - functions: keep in touch in space, controlled by your mind or your eye movement

## D. READING

### 1. Read the following passage and choose the item (a, B, C or D) that best answers each of the questions about it.

The first computers were very large machines. Now computers come in all shapes and sizes. There were still big computers for companies or universities. There are other special computers for factories. These large computers tell the factory machines what to do. But there are also small personal computers to use at home or in an office. There are even computers in telephones, television sets, and cars. These computers have to be very small. They are so small you cannot even see all their parts.

1. The first computers were \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. tiny                    B. huge                    C. in all shapes and sizes    D. all are correct
2. There are computers \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. for companies and universities                    B. to use at home  
 C. in telephones, television sets, and cars        D. all are correct
3. What does the word "they" in line 7 refer to?  
 A. telephones            B. television sets            C. cars                    D. computers
4. What is the passage written about?  
 A. old computers        B. modern computers        C. computer's shapes        D. computers's sizes
5. Which of the following is true?  
 A. The first computers were very large  
 B. Nowadays, there are only small computers  
 C. All modern computers are so small that you cannot see all their parts  
 D. Modern computers have the same size.

### 2. Read the text below then choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question below.

#### Why do birds sing?

People usually sing because they like music or because they feel happy. They express their happiness by singing. When a bird sings, however, its song usually means much more than that the bird is happy. Birds have many reasons for singing. They sing to give information. Their songs are their language.

The most beautiful songs are sung by male (cock) birds. They sing when they want to attract a female (hen) bird. It is their way of saying that they are looking for a wife. Birds also sing to tell other birds to keep away. To a bird, his tree or even a branch of tree is his home. He does not want strangers coming near him, so he sings to warn them. If a bird cannot sing well, he usually has some other means of giving important information. Some birds dance, spread out their tails or make other signs. One bird has a most unusual way of finding a wife. It builds a small garden of shells and flowers.

1. People usually sing because \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. They want birds to sing after them.                    B. They feel happy.  
 C. They want to tell a story about their life.        D. They like studying music. 2
2. One of the main reasons why birds singing is that \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. They are happy.    B. They want to show off their voice.

- C. They want to give information.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ sing the most beautiful songs.  
**A.** Happy birds      **B.** Cock birds      **C.** Hen birds      **D.** Female birds
4. Male birds sing beautifully to \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A.** express their happiness      **B.** show they are hungry  
**C.** say something is dangerous      **D.** attract a female bird
5. A bird sometimes sing to give \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A.** A warning to keep away      **B.** A warning to come near him quickly  
**C.** A warning about the approach of people      **D.** A warning to stop singing
6. Most birds usually \_\_\_\_\_ to give important information if they cannot sing well.  
**A.** dance      **B.** spread out their tails      **C.** make other signs      **D.** All above is correct
7. One bird's most unusual way of attracting a hen bird is that \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A.** it dances then sings  
**B.** it screeches and flies around  
**C.** it spreads out its tail  
**D.** it uses shells and flowers to build a small garden

### 3. Read the passage then answer the questions.

All of us communicate with one another nonverbally, as well as with words. Most of the time we're not aware that we're doing it. We gesture with eyebrows or a hand, meet someone else's eyes and look away, change positions in a chair. These actions we assume are occasional. However in recent years researchers have discovered that there is a system to them almost as consistent and understandable as language.

One important kind of body language is eye behavior. Americans are careful about how and when they meet one another's eyes. In our normal conversation, each eye contact lasts only about a second before one or both of us look away. When two Americans look searchingly into each other's eyes, they become more intimate. Therefore, we carefully avoid this, except in suitable situations.

Researchers who are engaged in the study of communication through body movement are not prepared to spell out a precise vocabulary of gestures. When an American rubs his nose, it may mean he is disagreeing with someone or refusing something. But there are other possible interpretations, too. Another example: when a student in conversation with a professor holds the older man's eyes a little longer than is usual, it can be a sign of respect; it can be something else entirely. The researchers look for patterns in the situation, not for a separate meaningful gesture.

Communication between human beings would be with just dull if it were all done with words.

1. This article is about \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A.** Study of communication through body movement have recently been conducted.  
**B.** Communication through body movement is as important as communication through words.  
**C.** All communication between human beings is only with words.  
**D.** Eye behavior is the most king of body movement.
2. Researchers think that \_\_\_\_\_.  
**A.** people can use and understand body language in communication.  
**B.** body language is considered more important than spoken language in communication.  
**C.** body language have recently been discovered.  
**D.** body language has just been studied through body movement. interesting
3. The word "intimate" in paragraph 2 means:  
**A.** wonderful      **B.** close      **C.** important      **D.** interesting
4. According to the passage, an American person feel uncomfortable when you \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. look into his/her eyes for a long time
  - B. avoid looking into his/her eyes
  - C. look into the ground
  - D. stare at his eyes for a second
5. When an American rubs his nose, it can mean \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. he or she is disapproving with someone
  - B. he or she is refusing something
  - C. he or she is expressing other possible meanings
  - D. All above is correct

**E. WRITING****1. Reorder these sentences to complete the email.**

To: Mary

From: Ann

Dear Mary,

1. today are/ How/ you/?

2. very happy/ I'm/ receive/ to/ in/ me/ which/ you/ your letter/ about/ tell/ your favorite color.

3. So/ I'm/ tell/ this letter/ to/ to/, too./writing you/ you/ my favorite color/

4. green color/ I/ very/ like/ much.

5. / , / green color/ nature./ As you know/ is/ of/ the color

6. for/ It/ life, health, resilience/ ,/ represents/ good fortune and youth.

7. feel/ Green color/ refreshing and comfortable/ makes/ when/ me/ seeing it.

8. I/ usually/ in my room/ after/ So/ a green flower vase/ to help me/ put/ studying hard./ relax

9. If/ tell/ something/ to/ have/ me/ more about you/ you/ ,/ write to me.

10. see/ Hope/ soon/ to/ you.

Yours,

Anna

PS: I also enclose a gift for you with this letter.

**2. Write an email to your friend and talk about your favorite colors and their meaning. Use the information in the picture below.**

**BLUE**

- + tranquility, love, loyalty, security, trust, intelligence
- coldness, fear, masculinity

**RED**

- + love, energy, power, strength, passion, heat
- anger, danger, warning

**BROWN**

- + friendly, earth, outdoors, longevity, conservative
- dogmatic, conservative

**GREEN**

- + money, growth, fertility, freshness, healing
- envy, jealousy, guilt

**PINK**

- + healthy, happy, feminine, compassion, sweet, playful
- weak, femininity, immaturity

**TAN/BEIGE**

- + dependable, flexible, crisp, conservative
- dull, boring, conservative

**PURPLE**

- + royalty, nobility, spirituality, luxury, ambition
- mystery, moodiness

**YELLOW**

- + bright, energy, sun, creativity, intellect, happy
- irresponsible, unstable

**GRAY**

- + security, reliability, intelligence, solid
- gloomy, sad, conservative

**TURQUOISE**

- + spiritual, healing, protection, sophisticated
- envy, femininity

**ORANGE**

- + courage, confidence, friendliness, success
- ignorance, sluggishness

**BLACK**

- + protection, dramatic, classy, formality
- death, evil, mystery

**SILVER**

- + glamorous, high tech, graceful, sleek

**GOLD**

- + wealth, prosperity, valuable, traditional

**WHITE**

- + goodness, innocence, purity, fresh, easy, clean

Your writing:

---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---



---

# UNIT 11: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

## A. PHONETICS

### 1. Odd one out.

- |                    |                  |                |                 |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. unpolluted   | B. unbalanced    | C. unmarked    | D. unlawful     |
| 2. A. unproductive | B. unpolluted    | C. unadvisable | D. unreasonable |
| 3. A. uncommon     | B. imbecile      | C. unhappy     | D. impossible   |
| 4. A. immediate    | B. imperturbable | C. imbalance   | D. immoral      |
| 5. A. immortal     | B. immense       | C. impious     | D. important    |

### 2. Put the following words in the correct column. Then say them aloud.

Polluted	pious	balance	Polite	moral
balanced	Mediate	common	mense	reasonable
Musical	Natural	mortal	friendly	kind
Possible	Advisable	grateful	sympathetic	productive

/un/	/im/
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

## B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

### 1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.

- Generally speaking, most technology has had a \_\_\_\_\_ effect on our lives.  
 A. benefit      B. benefice      C. beneficial      D. beneficent
- It remains to be seen what the \_\_\_ impact of this technology will be.  
 A. long      B. long-term      C. boring      D. relax
- Few \_\_\_\_\_ have had a greater influence on mankind than the computer.  
 A. invent      B. inventors      C. inventions      D. inventing
- It is undeniable that \_\_\_\_\_ have revolutionized our lives.  
 A. computers      B. computer      C. computerizing      D. computed
- The 21st century has already seen considerable \_\_\_\_\_ in computer technology.  
 A. progress      B. progressing      C. progresses      D. process
- It is not easy to predict how this \_\_\_\_\_ is going to develop.  
 A. technique      B. technology      C. technologies      D. technologizing
- One major \_\_\_\_\_ is in the use of computers in transport regulation.  
 A. advance      B. advances      C. advanced      D. advantage
- The cloud is one of the latest \_\_\_\_\_ in computer technology.  
 A. innovate      B. innovation      C. innovations      D. innovating

### 2. Which prefix form the opposite of these words?

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. ..... happy    | 2. ..... patient  |
| 3. ..... polite   | 4. ..... possible |
| 5. ..... friendly | 6. ..... employed |
| 7. ..... pack     | 8. ..... lock     |

**3. Complete the tables and mark the main stress on each word. The number 1 has been done for you as an example.**

Verb	Noun
<b>Invent</b>	1. <b>in'vention</b>
Develop	2. ....
3. ....	advance
Improve	4. ....
5. ....	analysis
6. ....	arrangement

**4. Name the thing mentioned in the following picture.**



**5. Fill the gaps with suitable adjective from the box.**

knowledge	careful
painful	dangerous
foggy	famous

1. You must be very \_\_\_\_\_ when you drive in wet weather.
2. It was so \_\_\_\_\_ this morning that I couldn't see more than twenty meters in front of one.
3. Everyone in my country has heard of her; she's very \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The people in the tourist information office were very \_\_\_\_\_. And answer all our questions without any problems.
5. This is a very \_\_\_\_\_ road; there were at least three serious accidents on it last years.
6. It was very \_\_\_\_\_ when I hit my leg against the corner of table.

**6. Choose the correct answer A, B or C in each line.**

1. Mary wants to speak with you. - Please tell her that I \_\_\_\_\_ her as soon as I'm free.  
 A. will call      B. will have called      C. will have been calling
2. Let's meet at eleven o'clock tomorrow. - Sorry, I \_\_\_\_\_ at eleven o'clock.  
 A. will be working      B. will have worked      C. will have been working
3. Say goodbye to Ann now. By the time you return, she \_\_\_\_\_ for New York.  
 A. will be leaving      B. will have left      C. will have been leaving
4. By 2020, he \_\_\_\_\_ as the director of this company for thirty years.  
 A. will work      B. will be working      C. will have been working

5. Why don't you ask Jim for help? I'm sure that he \_\_\_\_\_ you.  
 A. will help B. will have helped C. will have been helping
6. Please don't ring the doorbell when you get here. My baby \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. will be sleeping B. will have slept C. will have been sleeping
7. Where are you going to spend your vacation? - I don't know yet. Maybe we \_\_\_\_\_ to Italy next summer.  
 A. will go B. will have gone C. will have been going
8. She promised that she \_\_\_\_\_ him about it.  
 A. won't tell B. wouldn't tell C. wouldn't have told
9. Oh, you'll recognize him. He \_\_\_\_\_ a brown leather jacket and a red scarf.  
 A. will be wearing B. will have worn C. will have been wearing
10. She buys too many things. She \_\_\_\_\_ all her money long before her next pay.  
 A. will be spending B. will have spent C. will have been spending

### 7. Each the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify the mistakes.

1. "Be quiet!"  
 - I told her to being quiet.  
 A. told B. to C. being D. quite told
2. "Do you borrow my novel?"  
 - Katarina asked me if you borrowed her quiet  
 A. asked B. me C. you D. her asked
3. "Why do you choose this dress?"  
 - He wondered why you chose the dress.  
 A. he B. wondered C. you D. chose
4. "Can I borrow your computer?"  
 - Nick asked Jack to borrowing his computer.  
 A. asked B. to C. borrowing D. his
5. "Close the door!"  
 - My teacher tells me to close the door.  
 A. tells B. me C. to D. close
6. "Do not tell her what I said."  
 - Ann begged me not to tell her what he had said  
 A. begged B. not C. her D. he
7. "Can you help me, please?"  
 - John wanted me to help her.  
 A. wanted B. me C. to D. her.
8. "Do you play chess?"  
 - He asked me if he played chess.  
 A. asked B. if C. he D. played
9. "What's she doing?"  
 - I wondered what was she doing  
 A. I B. wondered C. what D. was she
10. "I'll drive you to the airport."  
 - She offered that he would drive us to the airport.  
 A. he B. would C. us D. to

### C. SPEAKING

**1. Put the conversation in the correct order then practice with your partners.**

- A. How can I help you?  
 B. How about Thursday?  
 C. Good morning. Dr. Albright's office. This is Julia speaking.  
 D. Ok! Hold on for a moment. Let me see! Is next Wednesday convenient for you?  
 E. Good morning. It's John Smith calling.  
 F. I'd like to make an appointment with Dr. Albright.  
 G. If you can't come for any reason, please contact me.  
 H. You're welcome.  
 I. Is 9:00 pm a lot for you?  
 J. Sure! Thank you very much.  
 K. I'm sorry, I am not free on Wednesday.  
 L. Sorry, Thursday is going to be a little difficult for me to come. I'd prefer Friday, if that's available.  
 M. Yes, that would be perfect be.

**Our answers:**

1. C	2.	3.	4.	5.
6.	7.	8.	9.	10
11.	12.	13. H		

**2. Give your own opinion for the following idea:****"Men and women view technological devices differently"**

Agree	Disagree
<i>Statement 0: They use technological devices differently.</i>	<i>Statement 0: It is same for them in using technological devices.</i>
Statement 1: _____	Statement 1: _____
Statement 2: _____	Statement 1: _____
Statement 3: _____	Statement 1: _____

➤ Now discuss with your partner about this topic using the ideas above to support your choice.

**D. READING****1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

Computer (1)\_\_\_\_\_ the significant role in our society. Computer (2)\_\_\_\_\_ our lives completely different. Our current significant development is (3)\_\_\_\_\_ computer in many areas. Examples of these areas are business, medicine, environment, technology, education and also our daily lives. It can be said that our modern lives cannot exist without computer (4)\_\_\_\_\_ participates actively and plays more and more important roles in our world, it is still one of the useful (5)\_\_\_\_\_ for human being so far. However, computer is developing right now and in the future, to be sure, it will be difficult to imagine the performance of computer in the future.

- |               |            |               |                |
|---------------|------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. plays   | B. play    | C. is playing | D. will play   |
| 2. A. creates | B. makes   | C. forms      | D. leads       |
| 3. A. why     | B. due for | C. due to     | D. because     |
| 4. A. despite | B. because | C. due to     | D. even though |
| 5. A. thing   | B. things  | C. tool       | D. tools       |

**2. Read the text and choose the correct answer A, B or C in each line.**

The invention of the telephone has made our lives much easier. Before the telephone was invented people used to communicate by fire or a light from a torch. Native Americans actually developed a more complex system of signaling with fire by controlling the release of the smoke, but such smoke signals also had their limitations. Another way to send a message between places that weren't too far apart was to use sounds better than the human voice. African tribes used drums to communicate. The way they used to get messages across from place to place was by foot, but once they learned how to use horses the messengers could get the message much faster. In the nineteenth-century the message delivery system was called Pony Express. It took about ten days for the message to get to the destination. Within no time the telegraph was introduced in the 1800's. The first message was sent on May 24, to the Supreme Court.

The inventor of the telephone was Alexander Graham Bell. He was born in Edinburgh, Scotland, on March 3, 1847. His father and grandfather were both elocutionists. His mother Eliza was a portrait painter and a talented pianist. Alex was his family name. Alex was taught at home, so he was not especially gifted at anything except the piano. Alex gave himself a prize on the eleventh birthday, adding "Graham" to his middle name. Alex became a teacher himself, since he liked teaching other people. Alex's hobbies were to collect bugs and butterflies, the skeletons of animals, birds' eggs, shells, and plants. Alex's grandfather died in 1865. His brother Ted died in 1867 of tuberculosis, a disease for which there was no cure in the nineteenth century.

The way Alex was introduced to telegraph was by his father, when he took him to Charles Wheatstone one of the most famous scientists in England at that time. He had developed a telegraph before Morse. Wheatstone had made a machine.

1. Before the telephone was invented, people used to communicate by \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. a light from a torch    B. fire from a torch    C. A & B are correct
2. A more complex system of signaling with fire is developed by controlling the release of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. the smoke    B. the fire    C. A & B are wrong
3. Using sounds is to send a message between places that weren't too \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. near    B. far    C. not given in the text
4. In the nineteenth century, how many days did it spend for the message to get to the destination?  
 A. ten    B. nine    C. eight
5. Who was the inventor of the telephone?  
 A. Ted Graham Bell    B. Eliza Graham Bell    C. Alexander Graham Bell
6. Alex was taught \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. at home    B. at school    C. at center
7. His mother Eliza was \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. a portrait painter    B. a talented pianist    C. A&B are correct.
8. Alex's hobbies were to collect \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. bugs and butterflies  
 B. the skeletons of small animals, birds' eggs, shells, and plants  
 C. A&B are correct.

### **3. Read the text again and answer the questions.**

1. What did African tribes use to communicate?
- 

2. How could the messengers get the message much faster than by foot?
- 

3. What was the message delivery system named in the nineteenth century?
- 

4. When did Alex's grandfather die?

5. Whom did Alex's father take him to?
- 

## E. WRITING

### 1. Write a question with *going to* for each situation. Use the words in brackets.

Ex: I'm going to play chess this morning. (What/ you/ do?)

What are you going to do this morning?

1. Mai is going to a party tonight. (What/ she/ wear?)
- 

2. I've bought a handmade picture. (Where/ you/ put it?)
- 

3. My brother is going to visit France next month. (How/ he/ travel?)
- 

4. We are having barbecue party next Sunday. (Who/ you/ invite?)
- 

5. Tony is meeting Jack at the airport. (when/ he/ arrive?)
- 

6. I have invited some friends home for dinner. (What/ you/ cook?)
- 

7. Tom is too busy to repair his door today. (He/ repair it/ tomorrow?)
- 

8. I'm not going to visit my uncle and aunt on Friday. (you/ visit them/ Sunday?)
- 

9. We are having a picnic next week. (What/ you/ prepare?)
- 

10. Linda is preparing a birthday gift. (What/ she/ buy?)
- 

### 2. Complete the following sentences.

1. "I'll send you a postcard." He told us that he \_\_\_\_\_ us a postcard.
2. "We've bought a new car." They told me they \_\_\_\_\_ a new car.
3. "I don't speak German." She said that she \_\_\_\_\_ German.
4. "You failed your art exam." You said that we \_\_\_\_\_ our art exam.
5. "I can't drive." He said \_\_\_\_\_ drive.
6. "You look nice." He told me that I \_\_\_\_\_ nice.
7. "We're going ice-skating." They said they \_\_\_\_\_ ice-skating.
8. "The students aren't listening to me." The teacher said the students \_\_\_\_\_ to her.

### 3. Using the given words/phrases to make meaningful sentences.

1. I love London. I (probably/ go) there next year.
- 

2. What (wear/ you) at the party tonight?
- 

3. I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I (find) something nice in my mum's wardrobe.
-

4. I completely forget about this. Give me a moment, I (do) it now.

---

5. Tonight, I (stay) home. I've rented a video.

---

6. I feel dreadful. I (be) sick.

---

7. If you have any problem, I (help) you.

---

8. The weather forecast says it (not/ snow) tomorrow.

---

9. I promise that I (not/ come) late.

---

10. Look at those clouds. It (rain) now.

---

# UNIT 11: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

- |                      |                    |                     |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>tool</u>    | B. <u>moon</u>     | C. <u>soon</u>      | D. <u>cool</u>     |
| 2. A. <u>crossed</u> | B. <u>followed</u> | C. <u>fluttered</u> | D. <u>happened</u> |
| 3. A. <u>tear</u>    | B. <u>bear</u>     | C. <u>hear</u>      | D. <u>fear</u>     |
| 4. A. <u>think</u>   | B. <u>through</u>  | C. <u>thing</u>     | D. <u>thumb</u>    |
| 5. A. <u>sew</u>     | B. <u>few</u>      | C. <u>drew</u>      | D. <u>news</u>     |

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

- |                  |               |                 |                  |
|------------------|---------------|-----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. unpolluted | B. unbalanced | C. unreasonable | D. unlawful      |
| 2. A. imbalance  | B. immortal   | C. impolite     | D. important     |
| 3. A. imbecile   | B. impossible | C. uncommon     | D. unhappy       |
| 4. A. adorable   | B. ability    | C. impossible   | D. entertainment |
| 5. A. engineer   | B. corporate  | C. difficult    | D. different     |

### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

**1. Put the words in the correct form.**

1. Global communication was changed by the \_\_\_\_\_ of the Internet. (invent)
2. The paper is both \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. (inform/entertain)
3. What makes this magazine so \_\_\_\_\_. (popularize)
4. The program is fully \_\_\_\_\_. (interact)
5. Annually the competition attracts millions of \_\_\_\_\_ worldwide. (view)
6. We apologize for the \_\_\_\_\_ caused to the passengers. (convenient)
7. Using the Internet in daily life can be \_\_\_\_\_. (cost)
8. The Internet is a very useful means of \_\_\_\_\_. (communicate)

**2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. That's what they always say, but they \_\_\_\_\_ about it by next year.  
 A. will surely have forgotten                              B. are forgetting  
 C. will surely forget                                        D. forget
2. Some customers have agreed that they \_\_\_\_\_ up their cars tomorrow.  
 A. are picking    B. will pick    C. pick    D. picks
3. Look! They \_\_\_\_\_ our trees.  
 A. cut    B. cuts    C. are cutting    D. will cut
4. It's a lot of work for one day, but his customers promise that next year they \_\_\_\_\_ their tyres changed earlier.  
 A. has    B. are having    C. have    D. will have
5. He \_\_\_\_\_ tired after that.  
 A. is probably    B. will probably be                                        C. is probably being                                        D. are probably
6. By the end of the day, Aaron \_\_\_\_\_ about 8 tyres.  
 A. has mounted    B. will have mounted                                        C. will mount    D. is mounting
7. Next week is the beginning of winter and the weather forecast says that there \_\_\_\_\_ snow tomorrow.  
 A. are    B. is    C. will be    D. will be
8. Aaron is carrying two tyres - he \_\_\_\_\_ the tyres on a car.

- A. is going to change    B. change    C. will change    D. are going to change

**3. Choose the correct tense of verb in each line.**

1. The train \_\_\_\_\_ at 11:45.  
A. will leave    B. will have left    C. leaves
2. We \_\_\_\_\_ dinner at a nice restaurant on Saturday.  
A. are going to have    B. will have had    C. will have been having
3. It \_\_\_\_\_ in the mountains tomorrow evening.  
A. will snow    B. will have snowed    C. is snowing
4. On Sunday at 8 o'clock I \_\_\_\_\_ my friend.  
A. will meet    B. am meeting    C. will have been meeting
5. They \_\_\_\_\_ to London on Friday evening.  
A. are flying    B. will fly    C. will have been flied
6. Wait! I \_\_\_\_\_ you to the station.  
A. will be driving    B. have drove    C. will drive
7. The English lesson \_\_\_\_\_ at 8:45.  
A. will start    B. starts    C. would have seen
8. I \_\_\_\_\_ my sister in April.  
A. am going to see    B. will see    C. is starting
9. Look at the clouds - it \_\_\_\_\_ in a few minutes.  
A. will rain    B. is going to rain    C. is raining
10. Listen! There's someone at the door. I \_\_\_\_\_ the door for you.  
A. will be opening    B. will open    C. am opening

**4. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. "Where do you live?  
A. Miho asked me where do I live.  
C. Miho asked me where did I live.  
B. Miho asked me where I lived.  
D. Miho asked me where I did live.
2. "What is the time?"  
A. Can you tell me what is the time?  
C. Can you tell me what the time is?  
B. Can you tell me what was the time  
D. Can you tell me what the time was?
3. "Why did he say that?"  
A. I would like to know why he said that.  
B. I would like to know why did he say that.  
C. I would like to know why he did say that.  
D. I would like to know why did he said that.
4. "Do we have a test tomorrow?"  
A. I've forgotten do we have a test tomorrow?  
B. I've forgotten if we have a test tomorrow.  
C. I've forgotten have we a test tomorrow?  
D. I've forgotten we have a test tomorrow?
5. "Don't talk!"  
A. The teacher told us not to talk.  
C. The teacher said not talk.  
B. The teacher told us to not talk.  
D. The teacher told us to not talking.
6. "Have you finished with the computer?"  
A. She asked if had I finished with the computer.

- B. She asked if I had finished with the computer.  
 C. She asked if have I finished with the computer.  
 D. She asked if I finished with the computer.
7. "I'll give you your money back tomorrow."  
 A. She promised me to give the money back the next day.  
 B. She promised to give me back the money the next day.  
 C. She promised to give me back your money the next day.  
 D. She promised to give you back your money the next day.
8. "Can I use your phone?"  
 A. I asked her I could use her phone.                   B. I asked her could I use her phone  
 C. I asked her if can I use her phone.               D. I asked her if can use her phone.
9. "When are you going back to Japan?  
 A. He asked when I was going back to Japan.      B. He asked when was I going back to Japan.  
 C. He asked when are you going back to Japan.    D. He asked when I am going back to Japan.
10. "Why did you have wait so long?"  
 A. She wanted to know why we had to wait so long.  
 B. She wanted to know why did we have to wait so long.  
 C. She wanted to know why did you have to wait so long.  
 D. She wanted to know why we have to wait so long.

#### 5. Put the verbs into the correct form.

1. I have bought two tickets. My wife and I (see) \_\_\_\_\_ a movie tonight.
2. Mary thinks Peter (get) \_\_\_\_\_ the job.
3. A: "I (move) \_\_\_\_\_ from my house tomorrow. I have packed everything".  
     B: "I (come) \_\_\_\_\_ and help you."
4. If I have enough money, I (buy) \_\_\_\_\_ a new car.
5. I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ there at four o'clock, I promise.
6. The meeting (take) \_\_\_\_\_ place at 4 p.m.
7. If you eat all of that cake, you (feel) \_\_\_\_\_ sick.
8. They (be) \_\_\_\_\_ at home at 10 o'clock because their son is staying alone at home.
9. Perhaps she (not/ be) \_\_\_\_\_ able to come tomorrow.
10. Because of the train delay, the meeting (not/ take) \_\_\_\_\_ place at 10 o'clock.

#### 6. Choose the correct answer A, B or C in each line.

1. The ethical implication of laboratory scientific \_\_\_\_\_ on animals is an issue discussed worldwide.  
     A. experiments           B. tools                  C. experiences
2. The dependency to computers displayed in the behavior of certain people is called computer \_\_\_\_\_.  
     A. tool                   B. addiction             C. addiction
3. Technological and scientific \_\_\_\_\_ such as computers, cell phones, satellites... may boost the development of the third world countries.  
     A. ages                  B. tools                  C. digitals
4. The less people have access \_\_\_\_\_ technology, the larger the \_\_\_\_\_ divide is.  
     A. information/ digital   B. ages/ tool           C. modern/ computer
5. Computer \_\_\_\_\_ is the era in which computer technology has transformed our lives.  
     A. age                   B. century               C. year

6. \_\_\_\_\_ technology is related to entering space, maintaining and using systems during flights and returning people and things from space.
- A. modern                    B. digital                    C. space

### C. SPEAKING

#### 1. Put the conversation in the correct then practice with your partners. order

- A. It's my sister. She talks too much on the phone, and then her phone bill is huge. It's terrible!
- B. Sometimes I use it for business reasons, but mostly personal conversations or text messaging, go online or even download books and then read them off my phone. It is so cool.
- C. I guess so, for it makes life a lot easier and more convenient, but it's not like I couldn't live without it if I had to everywhere.
- D. Yes, I have a mobile phone. I carry it everywhere I go, not everywhere but close to everywhere.
- E. Who uses a mobile phone the most often in your family?
- F. What do you use it for?
- G. Do you have a mobile phone, Jack?
- H. Finally, is a mobile phone important in your life?

**Your answers:**

- |      |    |    |    |    |    |    |    |
|------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1. G | 2. | 3. | 4. | 5. | 6. | 7. | 8. |
|------|----|----|----|----|----|----|----|

#### 2. Answer the following questions according to the above dialogue.

1. What is the topic of this conversation?
- 

2. Does Jack always carry his mobile phone?
- 

3. Does he use his cell phone to download books and then read them off his phone?
- 

4. Does Jack use a mobile phone the most often in your family?
- 

5. How does the cell phone change his life?
- 

### D. READING

#### 1. Read the above passage and then answer the questions.

##### GM food

The genetic modification of plants and crops has been in practice for many years. This involves changing the genetic code of these plants so that they are more resistant to bad conditions like drought, floods and frost. Supporters of GM food say that it can offer the consumer better quality, safety and taste and for over a decade Americans have been eating GM food.

However, things are very different in Europe where genetically modified food is very strictly regulated and regarded with deep suspicion by the public. GM food has even been called "Frankenfood" in the press, a term inspired by the novel Frankenstein by Mary Shelley. There is a great cultural divide between America and Europe over whether such food is safe to eat and will not harm the environment and the discussion is still in progress.

##### Questions:

1. The genetic modification of plants and crops is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. changing the genetic code of these plants  
 B. being in practice for many years

- C. drought, floods and frost  
D. not given
2. GM plants are \_\_\_\_\_ resistant to bad conditions like drought, floods and frost.  
A. not              B. less              C. more              D. not given
3. GM food can offer the consumer better \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. quality              B. safety              C. taste              D. A, B, and C
4. What is another name of GM food?  
A. Frake food              B. Frankenfood              C. Frankelfood              D. Mary Shelley
5. Where is genetically modified food very strictly regulated and regarded with deep suspicion by the public?  
A. Europe              B. America              C. The UK              D. Asia

## 2. Read the text again and choose the correct answers.

### Beer and Cheese

When you are drinking a cold beer on a hot day, or eating a delicious cheese sandwich, you can thank biotechnology for the pleasure you are experiencing. That's right! Beer, bread and cheese are all produced using biotechnology. Perhaps a definition will be useful to understand how. A standard definition is that biotechnology (or biotech for short) is the application of science and engineering to the direct or indirect use of living organisms.

And as you know, the food and drink above are all produced by the fermentation of micro-organisms. In beer, the yeast multiplies as it eats the sugars in the mixture and turns them into alcohol and CO<sub>2</sub>. This ancient technique was first used in Egypt to make bread and wine around 4000BC!

### Questions

1. What is the main topic of the article?  
A. Brief history and modern developments of biotechnology  
B. Benefit of biotechnology  
C. Modern research in biotechnology  
D. Origin of biotechnology
2. What is not a product of biotechnology?  
A. bread              B. beer              C. cheese              D. fish
3. Biotechnology (or biotech for short) is the application of science and engineering to the direct or indirect use of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. short organisms              B. lifing organisms  
C. living organisms              D. indirect and direct organisms
4. What was the ancient technique to make first used around 4000BC?  
A. bread              B. wine              C. both bread and wine              D. Not given
5. Where was the ancient technique to make bread and wine first used?  
A. Egypt              B. Europe              C. Russia              D. America

## E. WRITING

### 1. Put the verbs into the correct form (will, going to, simple present or present progressive).

- If it rains, they (not/ go) \_\_\_\_\_ to the seaside.
- In my opinion, she (fail) \_\_\_\_\_ the exam.
- He (sell) \_\_\_\_\_ the car if he doesn't have enough money to build a new house.
- She is very tired, she (take) \_\_\_\_\_ a rest.
- According to the weather forecast, it (not/ rain) \_\_\_\_\_ this weekend.
- If you lose your job, what (you/ do) \_\_\_\_\_?
- In your opinion, (she/ be) \_\_\_\_\_ a good teacher?

8. What time (the sun/ set) \_\_\_\_\_ today?
9. Do you think she (get) \_\_\_\_\_ money from her boss?
10. (you/ take) \_\_\_\_\_ the children to the cinema this weekend? I have seen some tickets on the table.

### 2. Complete the following sentences.

1. John: "Mandy is at home."      John said that \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Max: "Frank often reads a book."      Max told me that \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Susan: "I'm watching TV"      Susan said to me that \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Simon: "David was ill."      Simon said that \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Peggy: "The girls helped in the house."      Peggy told me that \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Richard: "I am going to ride a skateboard."      Richard said to me that \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Stephen and Claire: "We have cleaned the windows."      Stephen and Claire told me that \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Charles: "I didn't have time to do my homework."      Charles remarked that \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Mrs. Jones: "My mother will be 50 years old."      Mrs. Jones told me that \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Jean: "The boss must sign the letter."      Jean said that \_\_\_\_\_.

### 3. Each of the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify and correct the mistakes.

1. I wish my mother gives me presents more often.  
A. wish      B. gives      C. me      D. more often
2. What is the higher mountain in the world?  
A. what      B. is      C. higher      D. in
3. Thank you so much to helping me.  
A. thank      B. so      C. to      D. helping
4. The teacher was pleasing with the result of your examination.  
A. The      B. was      C. pleasing      D. of
5. The little boy didn't know how lacing his shoes.  
A. The little boy      B. didn't      C. how      D. lacing
6. The school library is free and open for all the pupils and teaching staff.  
A. is      B. and      C. for      D. all
7. To turn on the light, I was surprised at what I saw.  
A. To turn      B. on      C. was      D. at
8. The students suggested buying flowers for the teachers in the Teachers' Day.  
A. The students      B. buying      C. for      D. in
9. I would rather live on a farm than to live in a city.  
A. would rather      B. live      C. on      D. to
10. Why don't you borrow books in the local lending library?  
A. Why      B. don't      C. borrow      D. in

## UNIT 12: LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS

### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Put the words in the correct column. Some words may be in two column.

Speech	use	delight	Rest	odour
Harm	help	success	peace	waste
Care	beauty	job	Child	wonder

-ful	-less
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....
.....	.....

#### 2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.

- |                 |                |                |               |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. negative  | B. scholarship | C. develop     | D. purposeful |
| 2. A. ability   | B. acceptable  | C. education   | D. hilarious  |
| 3. A. document  | B. comedian    | C. perspective | D. location   |
| 4. A. product   | B. provide     | C. promote     | D. profess    |
| 5. A. different | B. regular     | C. achieving   | D. property   |

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

#### 1. Match the terms with the suitable definitions.

A	B
1. astronomer	a. the path followed by an object in space as it moves around another object.
2. black hole	b. a huge collection of stars, star clusters, and dust and gas that measures many light years across.
3. comet	c. a small frozen mass of gas, dust, and ice.
4. galaxy	d. a scientist who makes observations and studies planets, stars, galaxies any anything else in space.
5. orbit	e. super dense invisible objects in outer space that form when a massive star collapses from its own gravity.

#### 2. Choose the correct answer A or B in each line.

1. I was just wondering whether you \_\_\_\_\_ be able to help me.  
**A.** may    **B.** might
2. \_\_\_\_ God have mercy on your soul.  
**A.** May    **B.** Might
3. You \_\_\_\_\_ well be right.  
**A.** may    **B.** might
4. I told them I \_\_\_\_\_ go if I felt like it, but wasn't sure.  
**A.** may    **B.** might
5. Students \_\_\_\_\_ only borrow four books at a time.  
**A.** may    **B.** might
6. The examiner says we \_\_\_\_\_ leave when we've finished.  
**A.** may    **B.** might

**3. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**



**4. Each of the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify the mistakes.**

1. If I would have a lot of money, I could take a trip to space.  
A. would have      B. a lot of      C. could take      D. to
  2. We'd better hurry, or the train might leaves without us.  
A. We'd better      B. hurry      C. might      D. leaves
  3. I asked her if she believes in the existence of UFOs.  
A. asked      B. if      C. believes      D. of
  4. Neil Armstrong, the first man to walk on the moon, who taught at Cincinnati University in the 1970s.  
A. the first      B. to walk      C. who taught      D. in the 1970s
  5. When you are in orbit, you will be able to get out your seat and walk in the cabin.  
A. When      B. in orbit      C. get out      D. walk in
  6. On July 20, 1969, Astronaut Neil Armstrong has stepped down onto the moon.  
A. On      B. Astronaut      C. has stepped      D. down onto
  7. What make you believe in the existence of UFOs?

- |   |               |         |              |
|---|---------------|---------|--------------|
| A. make   | B. believe    | C. in   | D. existence |
| 8. If everyone <u>don't</u> throw trash <u>onto</u> the water, the water <u>will</u> not be <u>polluted</u> . |               |         |              |
| A. don't  | B. onto       | C. will | D. polluted  |
| 9. Human <u>has</u> long been <u>fascinated</u> <u>by</u> <u>outer</u> space.                                 |               |         |              |
| A. has  | B. fascinated | C. by   | D. outer     |
| 10. The <u>astronauts</u> <u>orbited</u> <u>into</u> the earth <u>in</u> three hours.                         |               |         |              |
| A. astronauts   | B. orbited    | C. into | D. in        |

**5. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.**

1. "Jean, have you seen my gloves?" Tom asked.  
 A. Tom asked Jean whether/if she had seen his gloves.  
 B. Tom asked Jean whether/if had you seen his gloves.  
 C. Tom asked Jean whether/if had she seen his gloves.  
 D. Tom asked Jean whether if she had seen her gloves.
2. "Don't leave the window open, Ann", I said.  
 A. I told Ann does not leave the window open.  
 B. I told Ann not to leave the window open.  
 C. I told Ann to leave the window open.  
 D. I told Ann not leave the window open.
3. "I'll have a cup of coffee with you," she said.  
 A. She said that she have a cup of coffee with me.  
 B. She said that she had a cup of coffee with me.  
 C. She said that she would have a cup of coffee with me.  
 D. She said that she would have a cup of coffee with you.
4. "I'll pay him if can" she said.  
 A. She said that she will pay him if she could.  
 B. She said that I would pay him if I could.  
 C. She said that she would pay him if she could.  
 D. She said that she would pay him if she can.
5. "What are you going to do next summer?" she asked.  
 A. She asked us what we were going to do the following summer.  
 B. She asked us what I was going to do the following summer.  
 C. She asked us what were we going to do the following summer.  
 D. She asked us what we was going to do the following summer.
6. "I'll phone you tomorrow," he told Jack.  
 A. He told Jack that I would phone him the following day.  
 B. He told Jack that I will phone him the following.  
 C. He told Jack that he would phone him tomorrow.  
 D. He told Jack that he would phone him the following day.
7. "Can I sit beside you, Jean?" Tom asked.  
 A. Tom asked Jean whether/if I could sit beside her.  
 B. Tom asked Jean whether/if could he sit beside her.  
 C. Tom asked Jean whether if he could sit beside her.  
 D. Tom asked Jean whether/if he could sit beside you.
8. "I want a bike for my birthday," he said.

- A. He said that he wanted a bike for his birthday.  
 B. He said that I wanted a bike for his birthday.  
 C. He said that he wants a bike for his birthday.  
 D. He said that he wanted a bike for my birthday.
9. "Don't keep the door locked," he said to us.  
 A. He told us not to keep the door locked.  
 B. He told us do not keep the door locked.  
 C. He told us not keep the door locked.  
 D. He told us to not keep the door locked.
10. "How long are you going to stay?" I asked him.  
 A. I asked him how long I was going to stay.  
 B. I asked him how long you were going to stay.  
 C. I asked him how long were you going to stay.  
 D. I asked him how long he was going to stay.

#### 6. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

1. Take your umbrella as it (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ today.
2. He is still at work! He (come) \_\_\_\_\_ late I am afraid.
3. John couldn't repair his washing-machine; he (ask) \_\_\_\_\_ his neighbor.
4. They talked too loudly. They (wake) \_\_\_\_\_ the baby!
5. Darling! I wonder if I (offer) \_\_\_\_\_ you that marvelous car you saw yesterday?
6. Mum! My friends are having a party tonight; (go) \_\_\_\_\_ please?
7. Sweetheart! As you were at home, you (do) \_\_\_\_\_ the ironing, don't you think?
8. Yes darling, but I was afraid I (burn) \_\_\_\_\_ your marvelous shirt!
9. He (be) \_\_\_\_\_ late because his flight has been delayed.
10. Look at those clouds! It (rain) \_\_\_\_\_ in a minute.

#### C. SPEAKING.

##### 1. Put the sentences in the correct order to have a conversation then practice it with your partners.

- A. What about the moon?
- B. Mai, I think there is no life on the Mars.
- C. Some scientists are not sure that people can live on the moon. The temperature in the moon is very hot and very cold. That's the reason why it's hard for us to live there.
- D. It's because there is no air and water there.
- E. Me too.
- F. Do you think there might be life in other planets, Phong?
- G. Why do you think so, Phong?
- H. I'm not sure, but I hope that.

Your answers:

1. B	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.
------	----	----	----	----	----	----	----

##### 2. Read the conversation again and answer the questions.

1. Does Phong think that man can live on the Mars?
- 

2. Why there is no life on the Mars?
-

3. Do scientists think that man can live on the moon?

---

4. Is the temperature on the moon very hot and cold?

---

5. Is Phong sure that there might be life in other planets?

---

### 3. Put the conversation in the correct order then practice with your partners.

A. And how about small circles in the middle?

B. There might be minerals in Mars.

C. That's great!

D. Well, there may be lots of gas. There may be some plants in Mars, too.

E. What do these dark shapes say, Tuan?

F. Gas. So what do these circle say, Tuan?

G. Well, there may be traces of micro-organisms. There may be a lot of little creatures in Mars, as well.

H. And what about those signs on the left corner?

I. There might be lots of fuels in Mars.

**Your answers:**

1. E

2.

3.

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

9.

## D. READING

### 1. Read the text and answer the questions.

How many planets are there in our galaxy? That's a tricky question to answer. Are there other planets that support life? That's exactly what the Kepler mission hopes to discover.

NASA launched the Kepler space telescope, designed to find habitable planets, in 2009. So far it has discovered five new Earth-sized planets beyond our solar system. These planets are hotter than the Earth's sun - much too hot for life as we know it. The Kepler team predicts that they will need at least three years (and possibly longer) to find an Earth-like planet.

The simplest requirement for a planet to have life (carbon-based life like on Earth) is for there to be liquid water (not frozen or gas) so the distance from the planet's sun and therefore temperature are important. There also needs to be the correct amount of air. If a planet is as small as Mars (half the size of Earth) its weak gravity means that it can't hold on to air molecules. If a planet is Neptune sized (four times bigger than Earth) it has very strong gravity and too much air. So size matters too.

### Questions:

1. What is the mission of the Kepler?

---

2. When did NASA launch the Kepler space telescope?

---

3. What was the Kepler designed to do?

---

4. How many new Earth-sized planets beyond our solar system has the Kepler discovered?

---

5. Are these planets cooler than the Earth's sun?

---

6. How many years did it take to find an Earth-like planet according to the Kepler team?

---

7. What conditions are necessary for an area to be considered a habitable zone?

---

8. Is the Mars bigger than the Earth?

---

9. Is the Neptune four times bigger than Earth?

---

10. Does Neptune have very weak gravity?

---

## **2. Read the text and answer the questions.**

Do you want to plan for some kind of exciting trip? Do you have a million dollars? Are you very healthy? Are you a good traveler? Do you want to go nowhere? Then you can have a trip to space.

If you decide to take the trip, you will have to get ready a few months before the flight. You must be in excellent physical condition. You should run a lot, swim every day, do aerobics and push-ups. You must get a letter from the doctor that shows you are in perfect health.

Once you get on the trip, you will be in different world. You will see pictures of the Earth. You may also find your country and other interesting places. You will be able to see the oceans, the big rivers, the tall mountains. You will be able to see them many times because you will orbit the Earth 16 times a day! You will also be able to see stars that you couldn't see from the Earth.

When you are in orbit, you will be able to get out of your seat and walk in the cabin. You will be able to walk on the walls or on the ceiling like a circus. You will not weigh anything! You will feel totally free and enjoy the wonderful feeling you have never had before. If you were on board now, you would experience those marvelous things.

So do you think you will be able to take a space trip? Start to dream now and your dream may come true someday.

### **Questions:**

1. What will you have to do if you decide to take a space trip?

---

2. What must you do if you want to show you are in perfect health?

---

3. What scenes on the Earth can you see from outer space?

---

4. How many times day can you see those scenes?

---

5. What things can you do while you are in orbit that you cannot do when you are on the Earth?

---

## **3. Read the text again and choose the correct answer.**

1. What will you be able to see when you get on the trip?

A. the oceans, the big rivers, and the tall mountains.

B. the gardens, the streams, and the tall mountains.

C. the big lakes, the big rivers, and the huge waterfalls.

D. the oceans, the gardens, and the huge waterfalls.

2. How long will you have to get ready before the flight?  
 A. a few days.      B. a few months.      C. a few years.      D. one month.
3. When you are in orbit, you won't be able to.  
 A. walk on the ceiling      B. walk on the wall.  
 C. stand up and walk in the cabin      D. sit down and walk in the cabin
4. How many times per day will you orbit the Earth?  
 A. 16 times      B. 15 times      C. 14 times      D. 35 times

**E. WRITING****1. Put the sentences in the correct order.**

1. mom/ I/ go/ may/ out?

2. may/ you/ Jim/ eat/ cake/ some.

3. doesn't/ he/ know/ do/ to/ what/; he/ Wendy/ ask/ might/

4. come/ may/ he/ late.

5. done/ might/ you/ washing-up/ have/ the/!

6. may/ you/ bring/ health/ this/ happiness/ year/ and/!

7. on/ he/ holidays/ be/ may.

8. been/ might/ he/ killed/ have/!

9. phoned/ have/ he/ may/ having/ shower/ I/ while was/ a.

10. minerals/ there/ Mars/ might/ in/ be.

**2. Rewrite the following sentences without changing the meaning of the first sentence.**

1. "Open your book" he said to them.

He told them \_\_\_\_\_.

2. "Where are you going?" Jim asked Linda.

Jim asked Linda where \_\_\_\_\_.

3. "Which way did they go?" John asked.

John asked \_\_\_\_\_.

4. "Bring it back if it doesn't fit", I said to her.

I told \_\_\_\_\_.

5. "Don't try to open it now," she said to us.

She told \_\_\_\_\_.

6. "Is it going to be a fine day today?" I asked her.

I asked her \_\_\_\_\_.

7. "He's not at home", she said.

She said that \_\_\_\_\_.

8. "Is the bus station far away?" the girl asked.  
The girl wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_.
9. "Don't stay out late, Ann" Tony said.  
Tony told Ann \_\_\_\_\_.
10. "Please let me borrow your bike," he said to her.  
He asked \_\_\_\_\_.

**3. Rewrite the following sentences without changing the meaning of the first sentence.**

1. "Are you going by train?" she asked me.  
She wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_.
2. "Don't use too much hot water," she said to us.  
She asked us \_\_\_\_\_.
3. "Will you come to my party?" she said to me.  
She invited me \_\_\_\_\_.
4. "Don't do it again," she said to them.  
She told them \_\_\_\_\_.
5. "Did Mr. Brown send the potatoes to you?" she asked.  
She asked \_\_\_\_\_.
6. "Don't get your shoes dirty, boys," she said.  
She told \_\_\_\_\_.
7. "What do you want for lunch today, Peter?" Mary asked.  
Mary asked \_\_\_\_\_.
8. "Can I borrow your typewriter, Jean?" asked Peter.  
Peter asked if \_\_\_\_\_.
9. "Why didn't I get a computer before?" thought the office manager.  
The office manager wondered \_\_\_\_\_.
10. "You had better not lend him any more money, Amanda" said John.  
John advised Amanda \_\_\_\_\_.

## UNIT 12: LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

**1. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.**

- |                      |                   |                  |                   |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. <u>space</u>   | B. <u>strange</u> | C. <u>planet</u> | D. <u>play</u>    |
| 2. A. <u>alien</u>   | B. <u>alive</u>   | C. <u>alien</u>  | D. <u>balloon</u> |
| 3. A. <u>balloon</u> | B. <u>moon</u>    | C. <u>flood</u>  | D. <u>proof</u>   |
| 4. A. <u>mineral</u> | B. <u>pilot</u>   | C. <u>five</u>   | D. <u>size</u>    |
| 5. A. <u>mineral</u> | B. <u>life</u>    | C. <u>pipe</u>   | D. <u>sight</u>   |

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

- |                  |                  |               |                |
|------------------|------------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. education  | B. devolvement   | C. economic   | D. preparation |
| 2. A. chocolate  | B. structural    | C. important  | D. natural     |
| 3. A. attractive | B. perception    | C. cultural   | D. expensive   |
| 4. A. literature | B. entertainment | C. recreation | D. information |
| 5. A. attend     | B. option        | C. percent    | D. become      |

#### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

**1. Use the given words/phrases to complete the following sentences.**

Extraterrestrial	space	geometric	Solar system
orbit	gravity	minerals	plant

1. The Earth is a much larger object with high \_\_\_\_\_ and a very high escape velocity (a bit less than 12 km per second).
2. Jack plotted the \_\_\_\_\_ of the moon.
3. Let's \_\_\_\_\_ flowers in the garden.
4. The astronauts walked in \_\_\_\_\_ without a tether.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ are the foundation of industries ranging from construction to manufacturing to agriculture to technology and even cosmetics.
6. He also claims numerous \_\_\_\_\_ ground features are evidence of ancient structures.
7. Hoagland believes that NASA did indeed uncover evidence on the moon of an \_\_\_\_\_ civilization.
8. The \_\_\_\_\_ is full of planets, moons, asteroids, comets, minor planets, and many other exciting objects.

**2. Complete the following passage.**

#### Life on the moon

OL News has (1)\_\_\_\_\_ that a former NASA scientist believes that there are (2)\_\_\_\_\_ on the moon watching humankind, and evidence of their existence may go back thousands of years. For decades, researchers have (3)\_\_\_\_\_ that strange objects have been seen on or above the moon. (4)\_\_\_\_\_ mysterious pyramid shapes to unusual moving lights to tall tower-like objects and huge glass-like dome structures, stories and pictures abound claiming that Earth's next-door neighbor is loaded (5)\_\_\_\_\_ extraterrestrial artifacts.

Richard C. Hoagland - a former NASA consultant and curator of (6)\_\_\_\_\_ and space science at the Springfield Science Museum in Massachusetts as well as consultant to CBS News during the Apollo moon missions - has spent decades looking into what he asserts to be the truth about what was (7)\_\_\_\_\_ during the numerous unmanned spacecraft (8)\_\_\_\_\_ as well as the manned Apollo voyages to the moon 40 years ago.

1. A. report	B. reported	C. talk	D. talks
2. A. stranger	B. strangers	C. alien	D. aliens
3. A. claims	B. claimed	C. deny	D. denied
4. A. from	B. about	C. with	D. for
5. A. for	B. by	C. with	D. in
6. A. astronomies	B. astronomy	C. astronomist	D. astronomers
7. A. discovers	B. discovered	C. discovering	D. discovery
8. A. responsible	B. responsibility	C. misses	D. missions

**3. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. She said to me "I will go to China next week."  
**A.** She said she would go to China the following week.  
**B.** She said she will go to China the following week.  
**C.** She said I would go to China the following week.  
**D.** She said she would go to China next week.
2. She doesn't go to China with us.  
**A.** I wish she had went to China with us.  
**B.** I wish she went to China with us.  
**C.** I wish she had gone to China with us.  
**D.** I wish she didn't go to China with us.
3. Someone has stolen my bike.  
**A.** My bike have been stolen.                           **B.** My bike was been stolen.  
**C.** My bike has been stolen.                           **D.** My bike is stolen.
4. She is the woman. I met her last week.  
**A.** She is the woman who I met last week.  
**B.** She is the woman whom I met her last week.  
**C.** She is the woman which I met last week.  
**D.** She is the woman whom I met last week.
5. Money doesn't grow on trees. We aren't rich.  
**A.** If money grow on trees, we will be rich.  
**B.** If money grew on trees, we would be rich.  
**C.** If money had grown on trees, we would have been rich.  
**D.** If money has grown on trees, we would be rich.
6. I last saw her ten years ago.  
**A.** I don't have seen her for ten years.                   **B.** I hadn't seen her for ten years.  
**C.** I haven't seen her for ten years.                   **D.** I didn't see her for ten years.
7. Cars cause pollution. However, people still want them.  
**A.** Although cars cause pollution, but people still want them.  
**B.** Although despite cars cause pollution, people still want them.  
**C.** Although cars cause pollution, people still want them.  
**D.** Although of cars cause pollution, people still want them.

**4. Each of the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify and correct the mistakes.**

1. "I'll finish the work by the end of this week."

John promised finishing the work by the end of this week.

- A.** promised                   **B.** finishing                   **C.** by                           **D.** this week

2. "You ought to take a break, Andrew."  
She advised Andrew to takes a break.  
 A. she                    B. advised                    C. to takes                    D. break
3. "Don't forget to go to the supermarket after work."  
They reminded to go to the supermarket after work.  
 A. they                    B. to go                    C. supermarket                    D. after
4. "Why don't we sing a few songs?"  
He suggested we sang a few songs.  
 A. suggested            B. sang                    C. few                            D. songs
5. She told me, "I am going to the party with my mother".  
She told me she would go to the party with her mother.  
 A. told                    B. she                    C. party                            D. mother
6. They said, "We have plenty of time to do our work".  
They said they have plenty of time to do our homework.  
 A. have                    B. of                            C. to do                            D. homework
7. He said, "This is the book you have been looking for".  
He said this is the book I have been looking for.  
 A. the                    B. have                    C. looking                            D. for
8. Don't put your elbow on the table.  
She told me not to put your elbow on the table.  
 A. told                    B. me                            C. your                            D. the

**5. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. Write your name clearly on the top.  
 A. He asked to write my name clearly on the top.  
 B. He asked to write your name clearly on the top.  
 C. He asked write my name clearly on the top.  
 D. He asked writing my name clearly on the top.
2. Don't wipe your dirty fingers on my clothes.  
 A. He ordered do not to wipe my dirty fingers on the clothes.  
 B. He ordered not to wipe my dirty fingers on the clothes.  
 C. He ordered not to wipe your dirty fingers on the clothes.  
 D. He ordered don't to wipe your dirty fingers on the clothes.
3. Wait here under the tree until the rain stops.  
 A. He ask me to wait here under the tree until the rain stops.  
 B. He asked me to wait here under the tree until the rain stops.  
 C. He asked me wait here under the tree until the rain stops.  
 D. He said to wait here under the tree until the rain stops.
4. Come and see me whenever you have a few hours to spare.  
 A. She told me to come and see me whenever I have a few hours to spare.  
 B. She told me to come and see her whenever you have a few hours to spare.  
 C. She told me to come and see her whenever I have a few hours to spare  
 D. She told me to come and see me whenever you have a few hours to spare.
5. When did they tell you that?  
 A. They wanted to know when they told you that.

- B. They wanted to know when did they tell me that.  
 C. They wanted to know when they did tell me that.  
 D. They wanted to know when they told me that.
6. Have you seen the new film?  
 A. They wanted to know if have I watched a new film.  
 B. They wanted to know if had I watched a new film.  
 C. They wanted to know if I had watched a new film.  
 D. They wanted to know if I have watched a new film.

#### 6. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.

1. I have to do this job because I have no \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. choose              B. choice              C. choosing              D. chosen
2. English is used by pilots to ask for landing \_\_\_\_\_ in Cairo.  
 A. instruct              B. instructors              C. instructions              D. instructive
3. He did some odd jobs at home \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. disappointment      B. disappointed              C. disappoint              D. disappointedly
4. Don't be afraid. This snake is \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. harm              B. harmful              C. harmless              D. unharmed
5. During his \_\_\_\_\_ his family lived in the United State.  
 A. child              B. childhood              C. childish              D. Childlike
6. Jack London wrote several \_\_\_\_\_ novels on adventure.  
 A. interest              B. interestedly              C. interesting              D. interested
7. He failed the final exam because he didn't make any \_\_\_\_\_ or it.  
 A. prepare              B. preparation              C. preparing              D. prepared
8. The custom was said to be a matter of \_\_\_\_\_.  
 A. convenient              B. convenience              C. conveniently              D. convene
9. She is \_\_\_\_\_ in her book.  
 A. absorbed              B. absorbent              C. absorptive              D. absorb
10. As she is so \_\_\_\_\_ with her present job, she has decided to leave.  
 A. satisfy              B. satisfied              C. satisfying              D. unsatisfied

#### D. READING

##### 1. Read the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

Many people have seen UFO's and have taken great pictures of them. There is a mystery though, why haven't they landed and made contact with us? That is a tough question, and remains to be answered.

The evidence if unidentified flying objects is overwhelming. With new UFO sightings popping up every week, they just can't be ignored. Take for example the UFO sightings at the Chicago O'Hare airport. Several very creditable people saw the unidentified flying object up close and gave eyewitness testimony as to what they saw. We believe that contact with these aliens is coming soon. We also think that aliens can most probable help us with many of the problems humans faces such as the threat of Global Warming. Alien Technology from certain races is surely far superior to ours.

No.	Sentence	True (T)	False (F)
1.	There are a lot of pictures of UFO		
2.	Aliens have landed and made contact with human.		

3.	Several people saw the UFO at the Chicago O'Hare airport.		
4.	People believe that contact with these aliens is coming soon.		
5.	People think that the threat of Global Warming can be solved by aliens.		

### 2. Read the following and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate correct answer to each of the questions.

Are there intelligent beings on the planets in our solar system? Most scientists do not think so. If there are, the only likely place is Mars. It is fun to imagine our kind of humans on other worlds, but they would probably look so different we might not recognize them as people at all. Living things have a wonderful way of adapting themselves to conditions around in order to stay alive. Plants grow in the Arctic. Some simple animals can survive being boiled or frozen. Creatures live in the blackest depths of the sea under thousands of tons of pressure.

We cannot really state that our kind of air is the only kind living things could breathe or that they must have water or certain climate. Creatures that breathed other gases or lived in other temperatures, however, would not look like us. Are there people anywhere else in the universe? Maybe there are. In our own galaxy, there are billions of stars. Some must have planets with conditions like those on earth. Somewhere in space, there could be other thinking beings. If their planets are older, they may know more than we do. **They** may be a traveling in space.

#### Questions:

1. Scientists think that on other planets in our solar system there are
  - A. probably some other intelligent beings.
  - B. probably no other intelligent beings.
  - C. certainly some other intelligent beings.
  - D. certainly no other intelligent beings.
2. Scientists think that any intelligent beings on other planets in our solar system.
  - A. would live under thousands of tons of pressure.
  - B. would be very different from us.
  - C. would already be traveling in space.
  - D. would have adapted themselves to conditions better than we have done.
3. What do creatures do to stay alive if conditions around them change?
  - A. to travel in space.
  - B. to grow in the Arctic.
  - C. to go to other worlds.
  - D. to adapt themselves.
4. The bolded word "**They**" in the passage refers to
  - A. planets.
  - B. conditions.
  - C. other thinking beings.
  - D. billions of stars.
5. Other human beings live
  - A. possibly on other planets of stars in our galaxy.
  - B. possibly on other planets in our solar system.
  - C. possibly on other stars in our own galaxy.
  - D. everywhere in the universe.

### 3. Read the text again and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

No.	Sentence	True (T)	False (F)
1.	Most scientists think that there are intelligent beings on other planets in our solar system.		
2.	Intelligent beings on other planets are similar to human.		
3.	Plants in the Arctic can survive being boiled or frozen.		

4.	Living things can breathe other gases or live in other temperatures, and certainly look like us.		
5.	Intelligent beings on other planets may be already traveling in space.		

**E. WRITING****1. Put the sentences in the correct order.**

1. closely/ following/ the/ how/ are/ program/ you/ space/ now?

2. can/ photography/ "prove"/ from/ they/ the/ never/ that/ you/ left/ orbit/ Earth.

3. we're/ doing/ do/ think/ you/ the/ in/ put/ quest/ to/ Mars/ people/ on?

4. Thought/ Neil Armstrong/ it/ a/ good/ was/ have/ ideal/ to/ a/ point/ stop-off/ at/ Moon/ the.

5. people/ sending/ talking/ are/ about/ Mars/ people/ to/ in/ 2020s/ the?

6. imagine/ difficult/ it's/ to/ a/ private/ wholly/ send/ venture/ to/ lots/ people/ of/ Mars/ to.

7. think/ don't/ I/ there/ life/ is/ on/ moon /the.

**2. Complete the second sentences without changing the meaning of the first sentences.**

1. The doctor said to me, "You shouldn't lose weight"

The doctor advised me \_\_\_\_\_

2. Mary said, "Let's go to the park."

Mary suggested \_\_\_\_\_

3. "I didn't break the car", Jack said.

Jack denied \_\_\_\_\_

4. "You told a lie, Michael", she said.

She accused Michael \_\_\_\_\_

5. "I can't go to your birthday party next Sunday evening, Jack", said Jane.

Jane apologized for \_\_\_\_\_

6. "I won't help you with your homework. Never!" Katarina said to me.

Katarina refused \_\_\_\_\_

7. John said, "Please come to my party."

John invited \_\_\_\_\_

8. Mr. Brown said, "Don't play on the street."

Mr. Brown warned the children not \_\_\_\_\_

9. "Would you like to come on a picnic with us?"

They invited \_\_\_\_\_

10. "Please don't tell anybody what happened."

He asked \_\_\_\_\_

## WRITTEN TEST 4

Time: 45 minutes

**A. PHONETICS****1. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

- |                |              |              |               |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. medium   | B. computer  | C. formation | D. connection |
| 2. A. national | B. cultural  | C. popular   | D. musician   |
| 3. A. program  | B. prefer    | C. promise   | D. practice   |
| 4. A. future   | B. telephone | C. language  | D. tomorrow   |

**2. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

- |                  |            |             |              |
|------------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. A. mature     | B. measure | C. pleasure | D. adventure |
| 2. A. honest     | B. house   | C. hour     | D. honor     |
| 3. A. suggestion | B. action  | C. creation | D. invention |
| 4. A. message    | B. usage   | C. massage  | D. marriage  |

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR****1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. She often drives very \_\_\_\_\_ so she rarely causes accidents.  
A. carefully      B. careful      C. caring      D. careless
2. You are old enough to take \_\_\_\_\_ for what you have done.  
A. responsible      B. responsibility      C. responsibly      D. irresponsible
3. The more \_\_\_\_\_ you think, the better you feel.  
A. negative      B. negatively      C. positive      D. positively
4. \_\_\_\_\_ means communicating by expressing thoughts with words.  
A. Non-verbal communication      B. Verbal communication  
C. Body language      D. Sign language
5. He is unhappy because of his \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. deaf      B. deafen      C. deafness      D. deafened
6. Computers are \_\_\_\_\_ used in schools and universities.  
A. widely      B. wide      C. widen      D. width
7. She talks too much about something. She is a(n) \_\_\_\_\_ person.  
A. sensitive      B. active      C. talkative      D. interactive
8. She is very \_\_\_\_\_ he always cries when watching sad movies.  
A. attractive      B. creative      C. generous      D. sensitive

**2. Give the correct form of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. He (repair)\_\_\_\_\_ the car when his wife cooks dinner late for today.
2. What \_\_\_\_\_ you and your brother (do)\_\_\_\_\_ last night after having dinner?  
- I (watch)\_\_\_\_\_ a film while my brother (play)\_\_\_\_\_ computer games.
3. Watch out! You (cross)\_\_\_\_\_ the street and there (be)\_\_\_\_\_ many cars there.
4. At 8.30 a.m tomorrow, scientists (do)\_\_\_\_\_ some experiments to find out the way dolphins communicate with each other.
5. It (take)\_\_\_\_\_ the Earth 365 days to go around the sun.

**C. READING****1. Fill each blank with the correct form of the word given in capital letters.**

### Life on other planets

Humans have long been fascinated by (1)\_\_\_\_\_ space, and have wondered if there are intelligent life-forms elsewhere, which we might be able to contact. (2)\_\_\_\_\_, we've all seen space creatures on our TV and cinema screens, but "aliens" like these owe more to the (3)\_\_\_\_\_ of using human actors to play the parts than to any real form of (4)\_\_\_\_\_ investigation.

However, many serious space (5)\_\_\_\_\_ are now beginning to turn their attention to the question of what alien life might actually look like. One early result is Arnold the Alien, (6)\_\_\_\_\_ by biologist, Dougal Dixon. This strange being, unlike humans, has its eyes, ears and limbs in groups of three instead of pairs but, despite its odd appearance, its behavior not very different from our own.

- |                  |                |               |                   |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. out        | B. outer       | C. outside    | D. outing         |
| 2. A. nature     | B. natural     | C. naturally  | D. naturalness    |
| 3. A. convenient | B. convenience | C. convenient | D. conveniences   |
| 4. A. science    | B. scientist   | C. scientific | D. scientifically |
| 5. A. research   | B. researches  | C. researcher | D. researchers    |
| 6. A. design     | B. designs     | C. designed   | D. which designed |

#### 2. Read the text again and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

No.	Sentence	True (T)	False (F)
1.	Human have been interested in creatures from outer space for a long time.		
2.	Most space creatures in films are based on real form of scientific investigation.		
3.	Most films use human actors to play "aliens".		
4.	The alien designed by Dougal Dixon is similar to human.		
5.	The alien designed by Dougal Dixon has three eyes and three ears.		

### D. WRITTING

#### 1. Complete the second sentences without changing the meaning of the first.

1. "Do not draw on the wall," said the teacher to the boys.

The teacher told the boys \_\_\_\_\_

2. "When was your little boy born?" said the nurse to Mrs. Bingley.

The nurse asked Mrs. Bingley \_\_\_\_\_

3. "You should take more exercise, Mr. Robert," the doctor said.

The doctor advised \_\_\_\_\_

4. "Can I have a new bicycle?" said Anna to her mother.

Anna asked \_\_\_\_\_

#### 2. Change these sentences into passive voice.

1. Dogs usually use body language to communicate with their owners and other dogs.

\_\_\_\_\_

2. I'll send him an email about next week's work tomorrow.

\_\_\_\_\_

3. I organized a video conference about environmental protection.

\_\_\_\_\_

4. Now people are using Skype to call for others without paying money.

\_\_\_\_\_

### E. SPEAKING

**Talk about your way of communicating with other people in your own planet in the future.**

- What and where is your planet? Describe your planet in some sentences.
- Can you list some types of communication?
- What is the most popular type of communication? Why?

# PHỤ LỤC CÓ ĐÁP ÁN

## UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITIES

### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Read the following words and put them in the correct column.

/br/	/pr/
break, brave; bring; brown; brush; breath; brother; bracelet; broccoli; brown	practice; pray; pretty; apricot; pride; prize; prawn; print; president, april

#### 2. Underline the words contain cluster /br/ and /pr/. Then read the sentences aloud.

1. The Vietnamese usually buy peach blossoms and apricot blossoms to celebrate Tet.
2. My brother practices Spanish pronunciation every morning.
3. Tuan is the president of stamp collector's club.
4. We are preparing bread and milk for the trip tomorrow.
5. My mother is making apricot jam in the kitchen.
6. She brushes her teeth and gets beautiful dresses to prepare for the first day to school.
7. She has a beautiful bracelet.
8. The president has set a new goal for the country.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

#### 1. Old one out.

1. C                  2. D                  3. B                  4. D                  5. B

#### 2. Write the name of the leisure activities under each picture.

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. pet training             | 2. playing computer games |
| 3. hanging out with friends | 4. making origami         |
| 5. making crafts            | 6. watching TV            |
| 7. collecting stamps        | 8. reading books          |

#### 3. Write the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- |                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. going       | 2. spending/ going |
| 3. drinking    | 4. listening       |
| 5. watching    | 6. making/ drawing |
| 7. hanging out | 8. eating          |
| 9. turning     | 10. working        |

#### 4. Choose the correct answer.

1. D                  2. A                  3. C                  4. A                  5. B  
6. A                  7. A                  8. A                  9. C                  10. A

#### 5. Add the words or phrases in the box to each group.

1. Playing: football, badminton, tennis, skateboarding, sports
2. Doing: judo, yoga, DIY, exercise,
3. Making: craft, origami, cake, handmade cards
4. Visiting: relatives, friends, museum
5. Going: shopping, fishing, picnic, to local performances
6. Reading: book, novel, newspaper, a poem

#### 6. Write some sentences about yourself using the following words.

1. Love: I love reading.
2. Enjoy: I enjoy going out with my family.
3. Adore: I adore cloud watching.
4. Fancy: I fancy cooking with my mom.
5. Dislike: I dislike talking in the public.
6. Detest: I detest eating fish but my mom likes it.
7. Hate: I hate getting up early.
8. Don't mind: I don't mind helping other people.

**7. Each of the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify the mistakes and rewrite the correct sentences in the spaces.**

- a. My friends and I are really keen on play computer games. -> **playing**
- b. I really like to getting involved in team sports. It is good for building up co-operative skills. -> **get**
- c. Minh especially loving to spend her free time sleeping and being lazy in my room. -> **loves**
- d. She enjoys go shopping on weekends and hang out with friends. -> **going/ hanging**
- e. I am very interested in study English. -> **studying**

### C. SPEAKING

**1. Put the conversation in the correct order then practice with your partners. The first and the last are your cue.**

- |      |      |      |       |       |      |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|------|
| 1. H | 2. B | 3. G | 4. I  | 5. C  | 6. F |
| 7. K | 8. A | 9. J | 10. E | 11. D |      |

**2. Read the conversation again and answer the questions.**

1. Phuc likes horrible movies.
2. Yes, she is.
3. They will see a film at Platinum Movie Center.
4. They will see the movie "Adeline".
5. They will meet each other at 7 pm.

**3. Give your own opinion for the idea:**

"Students should or shouldn't use computer?"

Agree	Disagree
<i>Reason 0: Students can learn English online.</i> Reason 1: update news Reason 2: contact with friends Reason 3: find information for their homework Reason 4: relax or entertain	<i>Reason 0: using computer can be harmful for your eyes.</i> Reason 1: can be addicted Reason 2: waste time for playing computer games Reason 3: get bad effects from bad webs or strangers Reason 4: reduce physical activities

### D. READING

**1. Answer the questions.**

1. The most favourite leisure activity for teenager in the UK is listening to music.
2. 23 percentages of teenager like playing computer game in their free time.
3. The least popular activity is "reading".
4. Yes, they are.

**2. Read the text and choose the correct answer.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B |
|------|------|------|------|

**3. Read the text again then answer these questions.**

1. They should contact their parents immediately.

- 2 Yes, it is
3. You can manage your spending or receiving money with the help of money management apps.
4. Yes, I think each student should have a mobile phone.

## E. WRITING

### 1. Complete the following paragraph with the words in the “organizing your ideas” box.

1. firstly            2. secondly            3. thirdly            4. Moreover            5. for these reasons

### 2. Using the organizing ideas clues to reorder the recipe to make a pancake.

1. D                2. A                3. E                4. C  
5. B                6. G                7. F                8. H

### 3. Writing: use the text in part 2 as a sample

# UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITES

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

1. A            2. C            3. B            4. A            5. A

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is places differently from the rest.**

1. D            2. D            3. B            4. C            5. D

### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

**1. Odd one out.**

1. A            2. C            3. C            4. D            5. A

**2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A  | 2. C  | 3. B  | 4. C  | 5. A  |
| 6. A  | 7. D  | 8. A  | 9. B  | 10. B |
| 11. B | 12. B | 13. B | 14. D | 15. D |

**3. Give the correct form of verb in the brackets.**

- |                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. to see            | 2. Lending         |
| 3. reading/ watching | 4. reading/ was    |
| 5. watching          | 6. doing/ spending |
| 7. get up            | 8. Sewing          |
| 9. going             | 10. listening      |

### C. SPEAKING

1. In my free time, I like to V .....

I like + Ving.....

I hate + Ving.....

I hate to V.....

### D. READING

**1. Match the words in column A with their meaning in column B.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. D | 2. G | 3. B | 4. E |
| 5. A | 6. H | 7. F | 8. C |

**2. Read the dialogue again and choose the correct answers.**

1. B            2. B            3. A            4. B            5. B

**3. Read the article then answer the questions.**

- One thing the traveller don't often think about before traveling is how other cultures bathe.
- Americans often take a shower in the morning.
- Children often take a bath each night and enjoy playing with small toys such as boats and rubber ducks.
- You should be careful to keep the water inside the bathtub or shower.
- Yes, I think so.

### E. WRITING

**1. Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences.**

- When you game online, be careful when you make friends with strangers.
- We can see that Kim likes playing the piano.

3. Some hobbies are interesting such as making crafts or collecting things.
  4. Sitting all day in front of the computer can cause health problems.
  5. Do you fancy working with children?
- 2. Sample writing: TV is good for children.**

TV is good for children for these reasons. First of all, by watching television children can learn many interesting and adequate things. There are many TV programs about natural sciences, history and music. Watching this kind of programs allows children to get a general knowledge. Most of the children don't like attending to school and study and do homework but educational TV programs may help to educate them, this an entertaining and interesting way of learning. This works if their parents are responsible, that is parents must control what their children are watching on television and encourage their children to watch educational TV programs. Apart from that, children watch television for fun. There are many nice TV programs for children. This makes to entertain a child easier. For example, some parents are really busy and don't have enough time to play with their children, they have a lot of work to do and need to keep their children amused then TV programs are easy way to solve this. Finally, Television is a way of communication between children and parents. For example, families usually watch television during lunch or dinner and they talk about what they are watching, everyone participate in the conversation. Then, watching TV during dinner or lunch an important moment for family communication. From these reasons, TV is very important in life and good for children.

## UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Read aloud and put these words into the correct columns.

/bl/	/cl/
blossom, possible, blunt, table, blue, blog, block, blow, black	cloud, class, clothes, clock, close; cloud, clear, click, clown, circle, club

#### 2. Underline the words contain cluster /bl/ and /cl/, then read the sentences aloud.

1. During Tet Holiday, the roads are full of peach blossoms and apricot blossoms.
2. When the clock strikes 10 p.m, most people living in the countryside turn the light off and go to bed.
3. Farmers cannot use blunt tools to harvest crops.
4. Children are always attracted by clowns' tricks easily.
5. In the sky suddenly appear black clouds, which forecasts it's going to rain heavily.
6. We can enjoy the peaceful atmosphere and see the clear blue sky in the countryside.
7. People should respect the circle of life to possibly live in harmony with the nature.
8. There are fewer clubs for rural children than urban ones.
9. Doing the shopping for clothes is my favorite leisure activity.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

#### 1. Odd one out.

1. C                  2. B                  3. A                  4. D                  5. A

#### 2. Choose one noun from each box in Ex 2 and make a sentence using the corresponding verb.

Eg: Ride/ a horse => When I was young, I used to ride a horse.

1. I learnt how to ride a bike when I was seven.
2. Farmers often milk cows to make other dairy products.
3. They earn a living by raising chickens.
4. When apples are ripe, we pick them for selling to the supermarket.
5. Peasants usually grow different species of plants to increase the yield.
6. We collect a lot of wood whenever winter is coming. 3

#### 3. Using the adjectives in the box to complete the sentences below.

- |          |         |                 |             |
|----------|---------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. slow  | 2. vast | 3. inconvenient | 4. friendly |
| 5. Quiet | 6. safe | 7. Peaceful     | 8. nomadic  |

#### 4. Write the correct form of verbs in the bracket

- |               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| 1. is         | 5. loves/ listening |
| 2. swimming   | 6. makes            |
| 3. to water   | 7. fly/ is          |
| 4. harvesting | 8. Gather/ listen   |

#### 5. Use the adjective in brackets in their correct forms of comparison to complete the sentences.

- |                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. higher than                  | 5. more crowded than    |
| 2. more than                    | 6. the busiest/ hardest |
| 3. more popular                 | 7. noisier/ more quiet  |
| 8. faster/ more convenient than | 8. more serious than    |

#### 6. Choose the correct answer.

1. B                  2. D                  3. C                  4. A  
 5. D                  6. A                  7. A                  8. B

**7. Use the words in the right-hand column in the correct forms to complete the sentences.**

- |              |               |                |              |
|--------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. villagers | 2. collection | 3. colorful    | 4. Peace     |
| 5. Riding    | 6. farm       | 7. development | 8. carefully |

**8. For each group, choose the correct sentence A or B**

1. a. More industry and automobiles are concentrated in urban areas than in rural areas.
2. b. Air pollution in cities is worse than in the countryside.
3. a. The air in the countryside is fresher than in cities.
4. a. City children play less freely on the streets because of crowded traffic.
5. b. In the countryside, the life style is not so fast as the life style in cities.
6. b. Most people believe that country people live more happily than city people. people.
7. a. Farmers have to work harder in harvest time.
8. b. The starry sky at night in the countryside is clearer and more fantastic than that in cities.
9. b. The cost of living in cities is higher than in the countryside.
10. a. Life in a small town is less exciting than life in a big city.

**C. SPEAKING**

**1. Match the words in column A and the definitions in column B then make a complete sentence using relative clauses.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. e | 2. f | 3. b | 4. a |
| 5. c | 6. d |      |      |

1. A nomad is a person who often move to find new lands for growing rice
2. A buffalo-drawn cart is a means for transporting and carrying heavy thing by using animals
3. Harvest time is a period of the year when farmers collect their crops
4. A ger is a place the Mongolian live in
5. Meadow is a vast area of grass which farmers use for raising cattle.
6. Herding is an activity which includes taking cattle out for food and looking after them.

**2. Make mini talk with some following topics**

Eg: A ger looks like a huge tent. Putting up a ger is more difficult than a tent but less difficult than building a house. The Mongolian often put up gers for their nomadic life. A ger is very necessary for nomads.

**3. Fill the changes in the countryside that you have ever observed (or heard from your parents or grandparents) in the box below then talk about these changes.**

Things	In the past	At present
Roads	Eg: Dirt, stone, one lane for all kinds of vehicles...	Eg: Paved, more lanes for specific vehicles...
Trees	A lot of trees	Fewer trees, many houses instead
Housings	Small houses, cottages	High buildings and modern houses
Means of transport	Walk Bikes	Motorbikes, cars, trains, planes...
Services	Very few. People do everything by themselves and entertain by play some simple games they create on their own	Many. Thanks to the development of technology, people can do a lot of things to entertain and enjoy their life
Tradition	Old and some are conventional	Preserve the old traditions but make it more simple

Eg: There are a lot of changes in my village. First, roads are now paved and divided into more lanes for specific vehicles instead of dirt roads which have the only lane for all kinds of vehicles. Second, ...

**D. READING****Text 1: My Town-Newquay****1. Read the passage below and answer the questions.**

1. It is on the Atlantic coast in the south of England.
2. I will learn how to surf at surf schools there.
3. I can go kayaking, water-skiing or coasteering.
4. Because it is rock climbing, jumping into the sea and swimming in the same activity.

**2. Find the topic for each paragraph.**Things to do in Newquay: 2<sup>nd</sup> paragraphPlaces to go in Newquay: 3<sup>rd</sup> paragraphThe location of Newquay: 1<sup>st</sup> paragraph**3. Read the sentences and decide them True or False.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. F | 2. T | 3. T | 4. F | 5. F | 6. T |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

**Text 2: Living in the Country****1. Matching****Answer:**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. d | 2. c | 3. j | 4. b | 5. A  |
| 6. h | 7. i | 8. f | 9. e | 10. g |

**2. Choose the correct answer.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. D | 3. C | 4. B | 5. B | 6. D |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

**E. WRITING****1. Rewrite following sentences, using the given words.**

1. Hung flies kites the best in my village.
2. People living in the countryside don't have to drive so careful as those living in cities.
3. People find it more difficult to find a job in the countryside than in cities.
4. This is the most beautiful picture that I have ever seen.
5. None of houses in the village is bigger than his house.
6. In bad weather, the earlier farmers harvest their crop, the better they get.
7. More and more people prefer living in the countryside to living in cities.
8. Some people think city people are not so friendly as country folk.
9. It is 5 years since I have returned my village.
10. It takes a couple of father and his child at least 3 days and 2 nights to live in a village in the programme of "Daddy, where are we going?"

**2. Life in a small town or a village is different from life in a big city. Compare the life in countryside and in big cities from your observation or your own experiences. Use comparison forms to make your writing better.****Eg:**

Life in a small village differs from one in a big city. The first difference is about the cost of living. The cost of living in a village is lower than that in a big city. Villagers usually produce their own food such as vegetables, fruits or even meat, so they don't need to buy such food with high prices. Secondly, the traffic in the countryside is also different from that in cities. The traffic in big cities is more crowded than in the countryside because there are more vehicles such as cars, buses, motorbikes in big cities. The crowded traffic also causes many traffic jam and air pollution in big cities. In the countryside, the air is fresher because there are fewer vehicles and more trees than in cities. In the short, these are two differences to compare the life in the countryside and in cities.

## UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in underlined parts.**

1. B            2. D            3. B            4. C            5. A

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

1. D            2. A            3. C            4. B            5. B            6. A

#### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B |
| 5. C | 6. D | 7. B | 8. C |

**2. Give the correct forms of verbs in the brackets.**

- |                     |                       |
|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. harms            | 2. live               |
| 3. sometimes misses | 4. doesn't like       |
| 5. eat/ isn't       | 6. cook/ seldom cooks |
| 7. don't water      | 8. spends/ doing      |

**3. Odd one out.**

1. B            2. C            3. A            4. C            5. D

#### C. SPEAKING

**1. Describe the pictures.**

**2. Choose one of these following topics and talk about it.**

Eg:

I like listening to music, cooking and reading books especially detective stories in my free time. Whenever I listen to music, I feel relaxing and comfortable. After studying hard, I relax by listening to my favourite songs. So I can recharge my energy to continue my study. Secondly, I like cooking because I can create my own recipes and cook meals for my family. I have a lot of fun when cooking. Finally, the reason I read books in my free time is so learn more about the world. Books contain a lot of knowledge about life, some of which can not be learned at school.

#### D. READING

**1. Match the words in column A to the correct meanings in column B.**

**Your answers:**

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. d  | 2. i  | 3. a  | 4. b  | 5. k  |
| 6. h  | 7. j  | 8. m  | 9. o  | 10. n |
| 11. f | 12. l | 13. e | 14. c | 15. g |

**2. Read the essay again then choose the correct answers.**

1. B            2. A            3. D            4. B            5. C

**3. Summarize a day farmers work on their field in harvest time by organizing these following sentences in the correct order according to the above essay.**

**Your answers:**

1. It was in the middle of April that farmers started harvesting the fields of ripened wheat.
2. To reap the ripe crop, the farmers use sickles and scythes.

3. They sat in a line at one end of the field and reaped until it was noon.
4. At noon they stopped and rested for a while to have their lunch. S
5. After a little nap, they again set to work.
6. As the sun set, the harvested crop was bound into sheaves which were then carried and stored in a safe place.
7. The harvesting went on for a number of days.

#### E. WRITING

**Imagine you could take part in a reality program and you had a chance to experience a day with a poorer family than yours in a strange village. It was in harvest time. You would help them harvest their crop and enjoy meals with them. Write about your experiences and feelings after the program.**

**Your writing:**

Last summer I took part in a reality program called "the last survival" and had a chance to experience a day with a poor family in a village. It was in June when the harvest time started. The purposes of the program were to provide the participants an environment to challenge themselves by hard work they never did before and to show their abilities. I helped people there harvest their crops and lived with them. At first, I had a lot of difficulties in getting used to holding the sickle and working hard under the sun. After finishing the work, I felt that people there had to work very hard but they enjoyed and loved their work. After all, I was absolutely exhausted. Therefore, I love my present life with my parents and promised to study harder to get a better job because working on paddy fields was really hard and difficult.

## UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIETNAM

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Put the following words in the correct column. Then say them aloud.**

/sk/	/sp/	/st/
sky; skirt; skateboarding; sculpture; scarf; screen; Oscar	sport; spicy; display; osprey; spoon; spaceship	stadium; sticker; stilt house; test; august; fast; festival

**2. Underline the words with the sounds /sk/, /sp/, and /st/. Then read the whole sentences aloud.**

- Tet is known as the biggest and most popular festival of the year in Vietnam.
- The best time to visit the Hmong is during the Lunar New Year in late January or early February.
- Children often wear new clothes and shoes on the first days of New Year.
- Stilt house is one of the most traditional features of the Vietnamese culture.
- "Cuop vo" (Stealing Wife) is another special Hmong's custom.
- Many tourists are strongly attracted by self-woven scarfs there.
- On Spring festival, Hmong women often wear their colorful dress.
- In Vietnam, cuisine in the Central is spicier and saltier than others.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR.

**1. Odd one out.**

1. B                  2. D                  3. C                  4. A                  5. A

**2. Name the thing mentioned in the following picture.**

- |                  |                    |
|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. stilt house   | 2. Pagoda          |
| 3. peach blossom | 4. apricot blossom |
| 5. kumquat       | 6. Tet             |

**3. Insert word to complete the following sentences.**

- |                     |                  |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1. Buddhist pagodas | 2. ethnic groups |
| 3. population       | 4. languages     |
| 5. festival         | 6. unique dish   |
| 7. dance            | 8. famous        |

**4. Write the correct form of the verbs.**

- |                       |                |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| 1. singing            | 2. differences |
| 3. become             | 4. going       |
| 5. drinking/ drinking | 6. buying      |
| 7. closing            | 8. eat         |
| 9. going              | 10. stronger   |

**5. Choose the correct answers.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. A | 4. A | 5. A  |
| 6. D | 7. C | 8. A | 9. D | 10. C |

**6. Fill each blank with a, an, or the to complete the following passage.**

- |         |         |        |         |         |
|---------|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| 1. a    | 2. the  | 3. the | 4. a    | 5. the  |
| 6. the  | 7. the  | 8. an  | 9. the  | 10. the |
| 11. the | 12. the | 13. an | 14. the | 15. the |

### C. SPEAKING

**1. There is a dialogue between two students. Give the correct order of the dialogue.**

1. B                  2. D                  3. J                  4. H                  5. C

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 6. G  | 7. A  | 8. E  | 9. N  | 10. I |
| 11. O | 12. K | 13. L | 14. F | 15. M |

**2. Read the conversation again and answer the questions.**

1. The Viet or Kinh (has).
2. It's over seventy millions.
3. No, it isn't.
4. No, it isn't.
5. The Odu group mainly lives in Nghe An province/ The Odu mainly live in Nghe An province.
6. There are about three hundred people in the Odu group.

**D. READING****1. Read the following passage and then answer the questions.**

1. No, they don't.
2. Yes, it is.
3. They are proud of *Ao dai*.
4. The white *Ao Dai* is the required uniform for girls in many high schools across Vietnam.
5. No, it isn't.
6. Thanks to *Ao dai*, the beauty of Vietnamese women is honored.

**2. Read the text again and choose the correct answers.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. B | 4. C | 5. A |
|------|------|------|------|------|

**3. Read the whole text and choose the correct answers.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. A | 3. D | 4. A | 5. D  |
| 6. A | 7. C | 8. B | 9. B | 10. D |

**E. WRITING****1. Write questions for the underlined parts in the following sentences.**

1. How many ethnic groups does Vietnam have?
2. How many percentage of the country's population do Kinh people account for?
3. Where do the other 53 ethnic minority groups mainly inhabit?
4. Who are the most populated groups among ethnic minorities?
5. Who has issued specific policies and special treatments in order to enhance the living standards of mountainous people?
6. What should people make great effort preserve in each ethnic minority group?
7. Who once boasted a flourishing culture early in the history?
8. What is the population of the Odu group?
9. How do the Yao people feel about their elaborate costumes?
10. How are the traditional cultural identities of ethnic group?

**2. Write full sentences about Sapa by using the given words and phrases.**

1. Sapa is the mountainous district of Lao Cai province?
2. It has many wonders of the natural scenery.
3. The name "Sapa" literally means "sand" (Sa) and village "Pa".
4. The climate in Sapa is temperate and subtropical throughout the year.
5. One day, the town's weather experiences 4 season.
6. The average air temperature of Sapa is 15°C.
7. The majority of Sapa's residents are ethnic minorities such as H'Mong, Red Dao, Tay...
8. Sapa is the kingdom of fruit such as cherry, peach.

9. Silver Fall is one of the most attractive and wonderful landscapes in Sapa.
10. Sapa is famous for a unique festival called “love market”.

### 3. How to make floating cake.

**Read the note about how to make the floating rice cake. Then write full sentences to show a foreigner its recipe.**

Firstly, prepare the dough by blending two kinds of flour together with water. You should mix until the dough turns smooth and elastic.

Secondly, pinch a little dough and roll into a small ball. Repeat with the rest of the dough. Next, boil water and drop the rice in batches.

Then wait until the balls float to the surface of the pot to take them out. After that, put them into the bowl of cold water right away so they are separate from each other.

Finally, put the balls on a plate and sprinkle with sesame seeds and sugar.

## UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIETNAM

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part 1.**

1. A                  2. A                  3. C                  4. A                  5. D

**2. Write the right word or phrase under the following picture.**

- |                      |                |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 1. costume           | 2. stilt house |
| 3. ethnic minorities | 4. festival    |
| 5. terraced fields   | 6. pagoda      |

#### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

**1. Odd one out.**

1. A                  2. C                  3. D                  4. B                  5. A

**2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B | 5. A  |
| 6. D | 7. B | 8. C | 9. A | 10. C |

**3. Read the text and choose the correct answers.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. a | 4. b | 5. c |
| 6. d | 7. B |      |      |      |

**4. Write the suitable words.**

- |          |            |            |             |           |
|----------|------------|------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. which | 2. when    | 3. however | 4. to       | 5. when   |
| 6. after | 7. because | 8. so      | 9. although | 10. While |

#### C. SPEAKING

**1. Reorder the following dialogue.**

- |      |      |      |       |       |       |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. E | 2. C | 3. F | 4. B  | 5. D  | 6. H  |
| 7. J | 8. L | 9. G | 10. I | 11. A | 12. K |

**2. Answer the following questions according to the above dialogue.**

1. Yes, he has.
2. in the rambutan season.
3. It's rambutan.
4. It's so sweet and fresh.
5. Yes, he can.
6. The local people are friendly and simple.
7. It's the weather. It's so hot.
8. Yes, it's.

#### D. READING

**1. Read the above questions and then answer the questions.**

1. Vietnamese cuisine is extremely diverse. new
2. There are three main categories in Vietnamese cuisine.
3. No, there isn't.
3. They're rice, vegetables, soy sauce, and *nuoc mam*- fish sauce.
4. Yes, they're.
5. Yes, it's.

6. It's because of the typical and fresh flavor of native ingredients.
7. No, it isn't.

**2. Read the text again and choose the correct answers.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. C | 4. B |
| 5 A  | 6. B | 7. B | 8. A |

**3. Read the following text and answer the questions.**

1. She is from the Muong ethnic group.
2. She is in grade 8A.
3. Yes, they do.
4. She often wears a uniform at school.
5. They are very friendly.
6. She likes reading short stories, watching shows for kids on television, and playing outside with her friends.
7. Yes, she can.
8. It is because she is an excellent student.
9. She is good at Maths and English.
10. She wants to become a Maths teacher when she grows up.

**4. Read the above text again and make the questions.**

1. Where does he live?
2. Which school does she study in?
3. Does her classmates come from the same ethnic group?
4. Does she often wear her traditional costumes at school?
5. Does she like reading short stories?
6. Which languages can she speak well?
7. Does she often watch shows for adults?
8. Does she want to become an English teacher in the future?

**E. WRITING**

**1. Rearrange the words/phrases given to make complete sentences.**

1. For many ethnic groups in the mountains, the horse is the most suitable means of transport.
2. How many ethnic groups are there in Vietnam?
3. Would you like to live in the urban areas or in the mountainous areas?
4. When do Khmer Krom women of this village go to the river bank?
5. Our most important festival of the year is the Chol Chnam Thmay.
6. Khmer Krom is one of the biggest ethnic groups in the southern Vietnam.
7. Of these traditional costumes, I love the pink one most.
8. The Yao people are famous for their elaborate costumes.
9. Hung Kings Temple Festival is a significant festival in Vietnam.
10. The Gong Festival is held annually in the Central Highlands.

**2. Make questions for the underlined parts.**

1. Is terraced field characteristic in Sapa? .
2. What place/where would you like to visit?
3. How many festivals are there in Vietnam through the year?
4. Where does Long go to the beach?
5. How is the sea like?
6. How many provinces of the Central Highlands does Gong culture cover?

7. How often is the Gong Festival held in the Central Highlands?
8. What is a way to communicate with the gods?
9. What are the gongs?
10. What are associated with special occasions in people's lives, such as the building of new houses, funerals, crop praying ceremonies, a new harvest, etc?

**3. Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences.**

1. Lan Anh enjoys to watch cartoons on TV. -> **watching**
2. What many students are there in Long's class? -> **how**
3. She always tries to complete her homework before to watch her favorite show on TV. -> **watching**
4. Tuan are lucky to enjoy a British festival when coming to be there. -> **is**
5. For some people, washing clothes are hard work. -> **is**
6. There is the beautiful clock on the wall. -> **a**
7. While we were young, we used to have a chance to visit Brazil. -> **When**
8. *Hoa Ban Festival* is always full of songs and prayers. -> **always**
9. The 54 ethnic peoples of Vietnam live peaceful. -> **peacefully**
10. There are always regional differences in every countries. -> **country**

**WRITTEN TEST 1****Time: 45 minutes****A. PHONETICS**

1. B            2. A            3. D            4. A

**B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY****1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. c | 2. a | 3. c | 4. d | 5. b  |
| 6. a | 7. b | 8. a | 9. b | 10. A |

**2. Complete the passage with the following words.**

- |                |         |           |
|----------------|---------|-----------|
| 1. worshipping | 2. from | 3. belief |
| 4. happiness   | 5. made | 6. region |

**C. READING****1. Read the dialogue again and choose the correct answer.**

1. B            2. D            3. B            4. A            5. C

**2. Read the text and answer the questions.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. C | 3. D | 4. C |
| 5. D | 6. A | 7. B | 8. C |

**D. WRITING****1. Make the questions from the underlined words or phrases.**

1. Where is Hoi An located?
2. Why was Hoi An recognized as the World heritage by UNESCO?
3. What does Hoi An mean?
4. Who built a bridge in Hoi An in the 16<sup>th</sup> century with the unique and special structure?
5. When did the Hoi An resident decide to preserve using colored lanterns, one of the beautiful culture?
2. Using the suggestions below and your own knowledge, write a short paragraph (6-10 sentences) to introduce about your hometown.

Your writing:

My hometown is a picturesque village in the countryside, 20 kilometers far from Hanoi in the northwest. Its name is Ba Vi. It is very quiet and peaceful. The village is covered by a lot of trees and flowers. People live in harmony with each other and nature as well. My hometown is famous for producing fresh milk. A lot of dairy products are sold for tourists who visit Ba Vi National Park and many other places of interest in my hometown. I love my village where I was born very much because it is very beautiful and I have many unforgettable memories with my family and friends there.

**E. SPEAKING**

**Do it yourself**

## UNIT 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Read the following words and put them in the correct column.

/spr/	/str/
spring, offspring, sprinkle, sprite, spread, sprout	stripe, pedestrian, strike, strong, strange, straw, astronaut, stream, instructor, stress, instruction, straight, stress, strive

#### 2. Read the sentences aloud, underline the words contain cluster /str/ and /spr/.

1. In spring, the sprinkle often takes place in the north of Vietnam.
2. Strawberry is often used to make cakes and beverages.
3. Vietnamese people strived for the freedom and independence in the past.
4. Now there are a lot of factories in the countryside where many streams used to be.
5. When women are stressed, they often eat a lot of food.
6. Fairytales are spread from generation to generation by the oral method.
7. When a stranger comes to your house, children are told not to allowed him/her to enter.
8. Everyone should do morning exercise to keep their body strong and healthy.
9. Westerners often ask for something straightforwardly while most Vietnamese people say around the bushes.
10. Sprouts grow strongly in spring.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR.

#### 1. Choose the correct answer to complete these sentences.

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. C | 3. B | 4. C | 5. B  |
| 6. A | 7. C | 8. A | 9. B | 10. B |

#### 2. Match the pictures with the correct description.

Your answers:

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. e | 2. g | 3. h | 4. f | 5. i  |
| 6. c | 7. a | 8. k | 9. d | 10. b |

#### 3. Write the correct form of the verbs.

- |          |         |            |             |                        |
|----------|---------|------------|-------------|------------------------|
| 1. takes | 2. is   | 3. has     | 4. give     | 5. doing               |
| 6. use   | 7. live | 8. provide | 9. exchange | 10. to applauch/ lands |

#### 4. Give the correct form of words in the brackets.

- |                 |              |                |             |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------|-------------|
| 1. custom       | 2. customary | 3. traditional | 4. cultures |
| 5. celebrations | 6. Japanese  | 7. different   | 8. invented |

#### 5. Complete the sentences with the correct form of **have to** and **must**.

- |            |         |            |            |
|------------|---------|------------|------------|
| 1. have to | 2. must | 3. have to | 4. must    |
| 5. have to | 6. must | 7. have to | 8. have to |

#### 6. Underline the mistake then rewrite the correct one.

1. When waiting to buy tickets, you should queue in a row.
2. There is a custom that Vietnamese teachers have to wear Ao dai at school.
3. When coming to America, you should tip the waiter 10% of the bill.
4. You have to use the right hand when eating in India.
5. You must drive on the left in Britain.
6. Young people have to bow your head to greet adults in some Asian countries.
7. In the past, Vietnamese women had to stay at home doing housework.

8. As a worker, he has to wear protective clothes.
7. **Give suitable advice or obligations for the following situations.**
  1. You must bow slightly and take off your shoes before coming to their house.
  2. You and your friend should hold knives in your right hand and forks in your left.
  3. He must bow slightly when meeting old people.
  4. You have to eat by her right hand.
  5. You mustn't smoke there.
  6. He should prepare a gift for them when coming to her house.

### C. SPEAKING

1. **Talk about Vietnamese culture. Imagine you invite your foreign pen-friend to your house who don't know about Vietnamese culture. Tell him or her about some Vietnamese customs to help them have a good time at your house. Using the following suggestions.**

**Eg:** As being invited to a Vietnamese house, he/she should bring some gifts to the hosts as "a thank you" for inviting him/her. After knocking the door and getting into the house, he/she must take off the shoes and put them outside. Finally, it'd better for him/her to say hello and bow his/her head to adults he/she meet.

2. **Read the suggestions below and talk about Japanese culture by using *should* and *shouldn't*.**

In Japan, you should bow lower than the other person when the other person is older or has a higher social status to greet or thank. However, you shouldn't refer to a Japanese person by first name unless instructed to do so. You should use last name and 'san'

### D. READING

1. Match the words in column A and the meaning in column B.

Your answers:

1. e	2. a	3. f	4. b	5. d	6. c
------	------	------	------	------	------

2. Read the passage then answer the questions.

1. D	2. C	3. A	4. B
------	------	------	------

### E. WRITING

1. Complete the following paragraph with the words in the box.

1. important	2. shows	3. disadvantaged
4. celebration	5. happiness	6. prosperous

2. Read the table describing the difference between Vietnamese culture and American culture then fill in the table below.

1. Fill in the table below.

Comparison	Table Manners in Vietnam	Table Manners in the USA
Similarities	Eg: Sit down when invited Do not begin eating until the hostess starts or says to begin.	
Differences	- Using chopsticks and spoon - Try to finish everything on your plate. - When you are finished eating, rest your chopsticks on top of your rice bowl.	- Using forks and knives - Leave a small amount of food on your plate when you have finished eating. - Indicate you have finished eating by laying your knife and fork parallel across the right side of your plate.

2. Using these above ideas to describe the differences between Vietnamese and American table manners.

Your writing:

Vietnamese and America are different countries in the world. Clearly, Vietnam's table manners differ from America's table manners. Firstly, Vietnamese people use chopsticks and spoon while American ones use forks and knives to eat. Secondly, in Vietnam, people should try to finish everything on their plate to show how tasty the dish is and avoid wasting food. In contrast, American people leave a small amount of food on your plate when they have finished eating to show they are full. Finally, it is customary to rest your chopsticks on top of your rice bowl when you are finished eating in Vietnam. In America, you should lay your knife and fork parallel across the right side of your plate in order to indicate you have finished eating. Therefore, it is important to learn about cultures all over the world so that people will not be shocked when coming to another country.

## UNIT 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS

### TEST YOURSELF

**A. PHONETICS**

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

1. D            2. A            3. C            4. B            5. A

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

1. C            2. B            3. C            4. A            5. A

**B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY**

**1. Fill in the blank by using have to, must, should to complete the sentences.**

- |           |           |                  |         |             |
|-----------|-----------|------------------|---------|-------------|
| 1. has to | 2. Should | 3. Must/ have to | 4. must | 5. Have to  |
| 6. must   | 7. should | 8. Have to       | 9. must | 10. Have to |

**2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- |       |       |       |       |       |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C  | 2. B  | 3. A  | 4. D  | 5. A  |
| 6. C  | 7. B  | 8. B  | 9. A  | 10. C |
| 11. B | 12. C | 13. D | 14. A | 15. C |

**3. Choose the correct answer for each below.**

1. C            2. D            3. B            4. C            5. A

**C. SPEAKING**

**1. Put the conversation in the correct order then practice with your partners.**

**Your answers:**

- |      |      |      |       |       |      |
|------|------|------|-------|-------|------|
| 1. E | 2. H | 3. K | 4. A  | 5. G  | 6. F |
| 7. D | 8. J | 9. I | 10. B | 11. C |      |

**2. Work in pairs.**

Tell your partner about a custom in greeting in Vietnam or in other countries all over the world that you know or hear about from the others.

When coming to another country, you should learn a little bit about its culture. In Vietnam, it is a custom for people to greet who are older than you. You should respectfully fold your arms in front of your chests and bow your head slightly. Then say hello to them. This way of greeting shows your esteem to the elderly and the tradition of respect old people in Vietnam.

**D. READING**

**1. Read three first paragraphs of the passage and choose the correct answers.**

1. c            2. b            3. a            4. c            5. A            6. b

**2. Read the rest of the passage and choose the correct answer.**

1. a            2. b            3. b            4. a            5. b

**3. Read the article then answer the questions.**

- Children and elders will receive "li xi" on the Lunar New Year.
- They practice this custom for wishing good luck for both children and senior people during Tet.
- Children will respectfully fold their arms in front of their chests and give them the best wishes.
- Their parents will give them "li xi" and extend their wishes to the children.
- Yes, they do.

**E. WRITING**

**1. Fill in the Blanks.**

1. customs      2. greeting      3. cheek      4. stick out      5. range of

**2. Read the information below then write about the most impressive way of greeting to you.**

I was impressed by the way of greeting people in Thailand. It is "Wai". When meeting Thai people, I must place my hands in a praying position at my chest and bow slightly. It had better place my hands on my chest as high as possible to express my great respect to the other person. However, I shouldn't put my hands above your head because it can be considered as an insult.

## UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM

### A. PHONETICS

- 1.** Complete the words below the pictures with -ian or -ion then mark the stress syllable in each word.  
Read the words aloud.

1. mu'sician	2. 'action	3. elec'trician	4. di'rection	5. li'brarian
6. 'station	7. 'caution	8. phy'sician	9. ma'gician	

- 2.** Use the above words to complete the following sentences. Then read them aloud.

1. librarian	2. physician	3. action	4. direction	5. station
6. electrician	7. magician	8. caution	9. musician	

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

- 1.** Odd one out.

1. C	2. D	3. C	4. A	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

- 2.** Complete the table with appropriate verbs and nouns.

1. perform	2. reunion	3. celebration	4. preserve	5. process
6. song	7. commemorate	8. worship	9. organize	10. action

- 3.** Complete the sentences with the following words.

1. celebration	2. world	3. reunion	4. local	5. ancestors
6. biggest	7. made	8. traditional	9. moon cakes	10. money

- 4.** Choose the best answer A, B, C, D to complete the sentences.

1. A	2. B	3. A	4. C	
5. D	6. A	7. D	8. B	

- 5.** Choose the best answer A, B, C, D to complete the sentences.

1. B	2. A	3. C	4. B	5. C
6. B	7. A	8. A	9. C	10. C

- 6.** Fill each blank with an appropriate word or phrase in the box.

a) 1. choose	2. landscape	3. along	4. ancient	5. ethnic	6. terraced
b) 1. known	2. island	3. beach	4. animals	5. destination	6. of

- 7.** Connect each pair of sentences with an appropriate conjunctive adverb in the box to make compound sentences.

1. The tickets are very expensive. However, there are many people buying the tickets.
2. Tet is the greatest festival in Vietnam. Therefore, Vietnamese people love Tet.
3. Children wear their new clothes on the first days of Tet. Moreover, they can also receive lucky money.
4. Children like Mid-Autumn Festival very much because they can sing, dance, and eat moon cakes.
5. Although she isn't a Buddhist, she eats as a vegetarian.
6. She wants to enjoy the Tomatoes Festival in Spain when she is at the age of 20.

### C. SPEAKING

- 1.** Match the questions with the suitable answers.

1. B	2. D	3. E	4. A	5. C
------	------	------	------	------

- 2.** Reorder to make a conversation about the festival mentioned on task 1.

1. E	2. A	3. C	4. F	5. B	6. D
------	------	------	------	------	------

### D. READING

- 1.** Read the text and answer the questions.

1. It's about Vu Lan Festival.
2. Vu Lan Festival is considered as the second largest annual traditional festival of Vietnam right after Tet Holiday.
3. It takes place on the 15<sup>th</sup> day of the seventh month in Lunar Calendar.
4. He saw that his mother was suffering from hell's tortures.
5. He gathered monks and devotees and pray with them for his mother's relieve.
6. Yes, it is.
7. This festival helps ancestors' lost souls find their way back to earth.
8. On this day, people visit pagodas and temples.
9. To worship ghosts and hungry spirits, people often offer food, clothes and other items, and release animals like birds or fish.
10. They give presents and flowers to their parents to show their appreciation and gratitude.

**2. Read the text and answer the following questions.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. D | 2. D | 3. A | 4. D |
| 5. C | 6. B | 7. A | 8. D |

**3. Read the text again and answer the questions.**

1. It often lasts for three spring months.
2. The word "they" on line 7 replace for many pagodas, towers, etc on the way to the Yen Tu peak.
3. They are a pride and excitement in the happiness of the conqueror.
4. They come to Yen Tu to find the humanity values.
5. They consider Yen Tu as a religious, historical and ecological destination of tourism.

**E. WRITING**

**1. Rewrite the sentences by using the words given.**

1. Vietnamese people often clean out their homes before the New Year because they hope to get rid of the past year's bad luck.
2. To be lucky in the New Year, people often buy new clothes. Besides, they get a fresh haircut.
3. Although I spend about four days to prepare for Tet, I think I need more time.
4. Mai feels strongly excited about the amazing atmosphere on the festival. However, she sometimes feels it too noisy.
5. While Nga is cleaning her house, her mother is preparing some traditional foods.

**2. Reorder the sentences.**

1. Most families meet to exchange gifts and have a traditional meal.
2. Homes are decorated with the apricot blossom, peach blossom, and kumquat.
3. Children are encouraged not to fight or cry during Tet.
4. Many families plant a new year's tree in front of the house.
5. After the family meal, many Vietnamese people attend the local pagoda to worship ancestors.
6. The Glastonbury Festival is an exciting music festival.
7. Vietnamese people hope that the first person to enter their house is a generous and kind-hearted.
8. Before a festival, people prepare to decorate their house with colorful flowers.

# UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

1. Complete the following box, then mark the stressed syllable for all words.

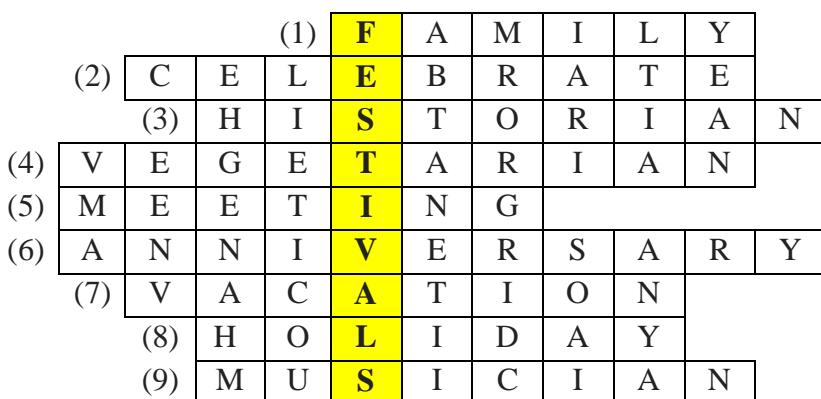
No	Verb	Noun
1	'demonstrate	'demons'tration
2	'extract	'extract
3	lo'cate	lo'cation
4	par'ticipate	partici'pation
5	'organize	organi'zation

2. Choose the word whose main stress is placed differently from the others.

1. B      2. A      3. C      4. A      5. C

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

1. Solve the crossword puzzle.



2. Fill each blank with an appropriate word or phrase in the box.

#### Passage 1

1. romantic      2. for      3. experience      4. besides      5. ancient      6. chance

#### Passage 2

1. bays      2. attracts      3. there      4. natural      5. with      6. islands

3. Choose the correct answers.

1. A      2. B      3. D      4. A      5. A  
6. C      7. B      8. C      9. B      10. A

### C. SPEAKING

1. Reorder to make a conversation about Tet.

1. C      2. I      3. F      4. A      5. G  
6. B      7. E      8. J      9. H      10. D

2. Work in pair. Talk which one(s) you will or will not do this New Year.

1. I will/ won't wrap Chung cakes.
2. I will/ won't dress beautifully.
3. I will/ won't visit my aunt this New Year.
4. I will/ won't watch fireworks when the clock strikes midnight.
5. I will/ won't get lucky money.
6. I will/ won't give my sister a handmade bag as a present.

7. I will/ won't get up early.
8. I will/ won't say wishes to everybody.

**3. Work in pair. Tell your partner about your favourite festival. Your task should include the following information.**

Among hundreds of festivals in Vietnam, I like the Mid-Autumn Festival best. It is held on the 15<sup>th</sup> day on the 8<sup>th</sup> lunar month. It is one of the most famous and charming festivals taken place in Vietnam. On this day, the adults and the parents prepare many different foods such as moon cakes, candies, biscuits, jellies, and fruits, etc. Besides, the children are provided with many nice lanterns - star lanterns, flower lanterns and diverse funny masks. They will use the beautiful lanterns, wear funny masks, fantastic lion dances, sing folklore songs in the house's grounds or on the streets when the moon is rising. It is really exciting. The reason why I like the Mid-Autumn is because it is a traditional celebration for children. Moreover, it is also a good example of the typical culture of the Vietnamese.

**D. READING**

**1. Answer the following questions.**

1. There are three disadvantages mentioned in the passage.
2. It is to preserve and develop the traditional cultural heritages.
3. No, they don't.
4. Yes, there is.
5. No, it isn't.

**2. Read the text again and choose the correct answers.**

1. B      2. A      3. B      4. A      5. A      6. A

**3. Choose the correct answers to complete the following letter. The number 0 has been done for you.**

1. D      2. B      3. D      4. C      5. D

**4. Read the letter again and choose the correct answers.**

1. B      2. B      3. B      4. A      5. A

**E. WRITING**

**1. Put the words in the correct order to make meaningful sentences.**

1. Hungry Ghost Festival marks a time of great superstition, celebration and for the living and the dead.
2. The Chinese also believe that spirits stuck in purgatory are released during this time.
3. Hungry Ghost Festival preparations begin nearly a week before the onset of the festival.
4. Chinese residents avoid hanging laundry outdoors and leaving anything outside.
5. On the 30<sup>th</sup> night of the festival, the Chinese believe the ghosts have had their fill and return to the underworld.

**2. Combine two sentences.**

1. When the bus arrived, we were talking/ We are talking when the bus arrived.
2. We were so late because we missed the bus.
3. While the hare was sleeping, the tortoise was running/ The tortoise was running while the hare was sleeping.
4. Although Tam worked very hard, her stepmother wasn't satisfied/ Her stepmother wasn't satisfied although Tam worked very hard.
5. If the festival costs too much money, we won't celebrate it/ We won't celebrate the festival if it costs too much money.

**3. Make questions for the bold words.**

1. Which festival is known as a festival for children?
2. When is the Mid-Autumn festival celebrated?
3. Why does traffic jam often happen here?

4. How is Yen Tu Festival?
5. How often is New-rice Festival held in Vietnam?
6. Which season do people often organize Hoa Ban Festival?

## UNIT 6: FOLK TALES

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Practice saying these sentences aloud. Pay attention to the intonation.**

**2. Write an exclamation under the picture then say them aloud.**

1. What cute babies!/ How cute the babies are!
2. What a luxury car!/ How luxury the car is!
3. What an interesting film!/ How interesting the film is!
4. What a slow tortoise!/ How slow the tortoise is!
5. What a cruel stepmother!/ How cruel the stepmother is!
6. What a greedy farmer!/ How greedy the farmer is!

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

**1. Jumbled words.**

1. ydgree	greedy	6. gleae	eagle
2. ucrel	cruel	7. rettoowdcu	woodcutter
3. elvid	devil	8. ndaro	dragon
4. ddabuh	buddha	9. ersantv	servant
5. ficere	fierce	10. nncugin	cunning

**2. Odd one out.**

1. c
2. d
3. a
4. d
5. d

**3. Write the name of these pictures then label the pictures with the phrases in the box.**

- |                 |               |                   |               |
|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|---------------|
| 1. ogre - G     | 2. fairy - E  | 3. woodcutter – I | 4. witch - C  |
| 5. princess - H | 6. knight - B | 7. hare - F       | 8. prince - D |

**4. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to complete these sentences.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. C | 4. B | 5. A  |
| 6. B | 7. A | 8. A | 9. C | 10. D |

**5. Write the correct form of verbs. Use the past continuous or the past simple.**

- |                        |                              |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. was working / heard | 2. grew up / moved           |
| 3. had to              | 4. dressed / dressed         |
| 5. saw / was waiting   | 6. were talking/ was reading |
| 7. did she dance       | 8. were playing / fell       |
| 9. was running / lost  | 10. was knocking             |

**6. Combine each pair of sentences using When or While to make one sentence.**

1. When I traveled around London, I met some very nice people.
2. She was speaking on the phone while her mother was cooking dinner.
3. When I left the house this morning, the sun was shining.
4. Kathy burnt her hand when he was ironing her clothes last night.
5. I was doing the washing-up when I broke a plate.
6. Tom was playing the piano while his mother was doing the washing up at 7pm last night.
7. He drank some juice when I ate a few chips.
8. When I was having dinner, I suddenly heard a loud bang.
9. When my father was working in the garden, an old friend passed this morning.
10. When Snow White was at home alone. The witch appeared and gave her a poisonous apple.

**7. Complete the story using the correct form of verbs in brackets.**

- |          |        |                |                |           |             |
|----------|--------|----------------|----------------|-----------|-------------|
| 1. had   | 2. was | 3. didn't know | 4. was sitting | 5. dived  | 6. reminded |
| 7. hated | 8. ran | 9. keep        | 10. ate        | 11. asked | 12. fell    |

**8. Each sentences below has one mistake. Underline the mistakes and correct them.**

1. One of my friends <u>calling</u> me very late last night.	was calling
2. Yesterday is a bad day for me.	was
3. The Wilson built a new house in Washington DC this year.	last year
4. I am listening to music when Jack came last night.	was
5. The princess had no choice and let the frog staying in her bed.	stay
6. When a dragon was fly over the tower, he heard the princess crying for help.	flying
7. What a beautiful princesses she is!	princess
8. I phoned you around 9 a.m last night, but no reply.	9 pm

**C. SPEAKING**

**1. Guessing the story: using the information in the table to guess the title of the stories.**

- |                                    |                       |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| a) The hare and the tortoise       | b) Sleeping beauty    |
| c) Snow White and the Seven Dwarfs | d) The little mermaid |

**2. A. In 5 minutes list all stories you have ever read.**

**Some stories:**

The Frog King or Iron Henry; Our Lady's Child; The Wolf and the Seven Little Kids; Faithful John; The Twelve Brothers; Brother and Sister. The Three Little Men in the Wood; Cinderella; Little Red-Cap; The White Snake; Lazy Jack; The magic swan...

**B. Which story do you like best? Tell your friend about the content of this story.**

**D. READING**

**1. A. Read the story and try to guess the meaning of these words below. The number 0 has been done for you.**

The story I like best is "Lazy Jack". It is about Jack - a simpleton who lived with his mother. One day, his mother told him to go out and earn money They were very poor.

Jack went to work for a Farmer and earned a penny. But while returning home, he dropped it in a brook. At home, his mother scolded him and told him to put his earnings in his pocket the next time.

The next day, he worked for a cow keeper, who gave him a jar of milk. Jack tried to put the jar of milk in his pocket and spilled it everywhere. Once again, his mother rebuked him. She told him that he should have carried it on his shoulders.

The next day, Jack was given a donkey. He carried the donkey on his shoulders. Now, the king had a daughter who never laughed. Seeing Jack carrying the donkey on his shoulders, she began laughing for the first time. As a reward, the king married her to Jack and they lived happily after that. I like this story because it's very funny and meaningful.

- |                               |                                    |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| - tremble: run rẩy            | - glance: liếc qua                 |
| - blurred: mờ, không rõ       | - speechless: không nói nên lời    |
| - irritate: tức giận, tức tối | - admonition: mắng mỏ, khiển trách |

**B. Now match the word in task 1 in A with their meaning in column B.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. D | 4. B | 5. F | 6. E |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

**C. Choose the best answer.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. D | 5. A |
|------|------|------|------|------|

**2. A. Put the pictures in the correct order of the story.**

1. C            2. B            3. A            4. D

**B. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D.**

1. A            2. B            3. A            4. C

**E. WRITING**

**1. Write full sentences, using the suggested words and phrases. You can add more words or make suitable changes.**

1. Little Red Riding hood lived in a wood with her mother.
2. When she was picking some flowers on the side of the path, she met a wicked wolf.
3. The wolf ran to Granny's house and swallowed Granny.
4. What did the eagle promise to the younger brother?
5. Giong saint lived in a village of Phu Dong.
6. The Emperor Hung Vuong announced that the prince who made the most delicious food would become the new emperor.

**2,3. Students imagine and write their own stories.**

## UNIT 6: FOLK TALES

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

1. A              2. A              3. C              4. C              5. B

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

1. C              2. D              3. C              4. C

#### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR.

**1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. D | 4. B | 5. A  |
| 6. A | 7. B | 8. A | 9. D | 10. A |

**2. Give the correct form of the words in brackets.**

- |              |                  |                |              |
|--------------|------------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. appeared  | 2. Birth         | 3. celebration | 4. careful   |
| 5. beautiful | 6. communication | 7. strength    | 8. imaginary |

**3. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the passage.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. C | 3. B | 4. C | 5. D  |
| 6. A | 7. A | 8. B | 9. D | 10. C |

#### C. SPEAKING

**1. Game: "Which story is this?**

1. The little red riding hood
2. Starfruit tree
3. The story of Tam and Cam
4. The God of the Mountain and the God of the Water
5. Giong Saint
6. Lion King
7. Sleeping Beauty
8. Aladdin and his magic lamp

**2. Speaking.**

#### D. READING

**1.**

Paragraph B	7
Paragraph C	6
Paragraph D	4
Paragraph E	2

**2. Read the passage again then answer these questions.**

1. Yes, I think it is true.
2. Fairy tales show children how to handle problems because we learn from the characters in stories and connect to their life in these situations like stories.
3. We should build capacity for our children because no one in life is immune from challenges so they need to discover in a safe environment that bad things happen to everyone.

4. Parents may find opportunities to discuss ethical related to a story, while reading with their children. Were the acts of the hero appropriate? What else could he have done? What would you have done if you were in his situations?

## E. WRITING

### 1. Choose the words or phrases that are not correct in Standard English.

- |                            |                                    |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. C: homeworks → homework | 6. C: have → had                   |
| 2. A: aren't → don't       | 7. C: gram → grams                 |
| 3. B: some → any           | 8. B: a temple old → an old temple |
| 4. B: over there → x       | 9. C: staying → stay               |
| 5. B: to → for             | 10. C: any → some                  |

### 2. Write full sentences, using the suggested words or phrases. You can add some words or make suitable changes.

1. Hue Festival is the biggest cultural event of Hue City.
2. Visitors can enjoy a colorful and grand opening ceremony with unique performances.
3. Vu Lan Festival is Buddhist festival that emerged long ago in Vietnam.
4. Hoi An is famous for its ancient buildings, shop and pagodas.
5. Cultural festivals occur in every country of the world.

**WRITTEN TEST 2****Time: 45 minutes****A. PHONETICS****I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

1. D                  2. B                  3. A                  4. D

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

1. C                  2. B                  3. A                  4. D

**B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY****1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. C | 3. A | 4. D | 5. B  |
| 6. C | 7. D | 8. C | 9. D | 10. C |

**2. Give the correct form of the verb in the brackets.**

- |                   |                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. travelled/ saw | 2. is watching/ is cooking |
| 3. was reading    | 4. read                    |
| 5. rises/ sets    | 6. is coming               |
| 7. left           | 8. cut/ was playing        |
| 9. bit            | 10. was sitting/ jumped    |

**C. READING****Read the text and answer the questions.**

1. C                  2. B,F                  3. B                  4. D                  5. C                  6. C

**D. WRITING****1. Combine each pair of sentences to make one sentence, using the words given in brackets.**

- When Hoa and I come, my parents are preparing to decorate our house for Tet.
- While Hai is in Thailand to enjoy the Loy Krathong Festival, Tuan is participating in his local festival.
- My grandmother does not like festival so much because it is too noisy.
- Although Da Lat is quite far away from my house, my parents and I often travel to Da Lat at Tet.
- Despite the bad weather, Jonny still decides to participate in the Bedford River Festival

**2. Write a short paragraph (5-10 sentences) to introduce about a festival in your country.****Sample:**

Thanksgiving is celebrated in November. It is a national holiday where people get together to share the traditional dinner of turkey and pumpkin pie. Thanksgiving started in the autumn of 1621. A group of European settlers in North America invited the Indians to join them for their first harvest in a thanksgiving feast because the Indians had taught them how to grow crops. Since then, Thanksgiving is held annually in America.

**E. SPEAKING****1. Rearrange the following dialogue in the correct order and read it aloud.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. E | 3. B | 4. F |
| 5. H | 6. D | 7. A | 8. J |

## UNIT 7: POLLUTION

### A. PHONETICS

#### 1. Put the stress of these words.

- |                |                |                 |
|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. a'quatic    | 6. 'logic      | 11. 'politic    |
| 2. me'chanic   | 7. i'dentical  | 12. e'lectrical |
| 3. me'chanical | 8. 'public     | 13. ro'mantic   |
| 4. scien'tific | 9. 'plastic    | 14. 'lyrical    |
| 5. 'magical    | 10. 'political | 15. au'thentic  |

#### 2. Find the words that has different stress pattern in each line.

1. B                  2. A                  3. D                  4. B                  5. B

### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

#### 1. Name each type of pollution with its relevant words/phrases.

- |                          |                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. light pollution       | 2. air pollution    |
| 3. noise pollution       | 4. visual pollution |
| 5. radioactive pollution | 6. water pollution  |
| 7. thermal pollution     | 8. soil pollution   |

#### 2. Complete the table with appropriate verbs, nouns and adjectives.

- |                 |                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------|
| 1. to endanger  | 2. edition/ edit           |
| 3. annoyance    | 4. instructible            |
| 5. to dramatize | 6. interesting/ interested |
| 7. choice       | 8. hot                     |
| 9. to low       |                            |

#### 3. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words in brackets.

- |                |            |             |                 |             |
|----------------|------------|-------------|-----------------|-------------|
| 1. dangerous   | 2. edition | 3. annoying | 4. instructions | 5. dramatic |
| 6. interesting | 7. choice  | 8. heat     | 9. invitation   | 10. lower   |

#### 4. Choose the correct answers.

1. B                  2. C                  3. C                  4. A                  5. C  
 6. D                  7. A                  8. D                  9. A                  10. C

#### 5. Combine the sentences.

1. Effect of global warming is that sea levels are rising because the polar icecaps are melting.
2. The global population has increased because of much better levels of nutrition.
3. Nuclear explosions and detonations of nuclear weapons lead to radioactive pollution.
4. More and more roads are being built as a consequence air pollution is rising.
5. In the last ten years, many BC valleys have been clearcut, so 142 species of salmon have become extinct.
6. The fish and other aquatic animals have died due to the polluted water.

#### 6. Put in the correct prepositions in the blanks.

- |        |       |       |       |       |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. by  | 2. to | 3. of | 4. of | 5. in |
| 6. for | 7. of |       |       |       |

#### 7. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of conditional sentence type 1.

- |                       |                                 |
|-----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Pollute/ will die  | 2. consists/ will get           |
| 3. melt/ will be      | 4. will disappear/ cut down     |
| 5. is thrown/ will be | 6. continues/ will be destroyed |
| 7. will save/ save    | 8. teach/ will know             |

9. travel/ won't have                    10. fines/ won't dump

**8. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form of conditional sentence type 2.**

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. were/ would pass                | 2. were/ would not eat         |
| 3. cared/ would not increase       | 4. would sort/ were            |
| 5. weren't polluted/ would recover | 6. Didn't throw/ wouldn't know |
| 7. didn't dump/ would die          | 8. would you do/ were          |
| 9. wasn't/ would be reduce         | 10 owned/ would build          |

**9. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.**

- |                              |                            |
|------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. send/ will receive        | 2. will go/ has            |
| 3. would spend/ was          | 4. don't phone/ will leave |
| 5. went/ would not be        | 6. has/ will learn         |
| 7. wouldn't buy/ didn't have | 8. played/ would have      |
| 9. were/ would change        | 10. would invited/ had     |

**10. Write conditional sentences type I or II for these situation.**

1. If people eat dirty food, they can be cancer.
2. If the factory didn't directly discharge a large volume of waste water into the Thi Vai River, the river wouldn't be polluted.
3. If farmers didn't use polluted water to water their plants, people eat these plan wouldn't become sick with diseases such as diarrhea, bacterial inflections even cancer.
4. If thermal pollution takes place, the water temperature in streams, rivers, lakes and oceans will increase or decrease suddenly.
5. If people live in radioactive pollution area, they can be skin cancer.

**C. SPEAKING**

**1. Work with partner and think about the effects of these situations.**

Sample answers:

1. If we breathe in toxic smoke, we will feel sick.
2. If we dump rubbish into the sea, we will have dirty seafood.
3. If we live near heavy traffic, we will have a headache.
4. People will have many diseases and die gradually.

**2. Talk about this topic:**

Solution:

- Don't throw trash on the river.
- Don't dump sewage into the river.
- Clean up any litter on the river.
- Don't throw chemicals, oils, paints and medicines into the river.
- Make people aware of water pollution.
- Governments should have strict laws to protect the river.

**D. READING**

**1. Read the text then choose the best answer.**

1. D                    2. A                    3. A                    4. B                    5. D

**2. Read the text then decide these sentences are true or false.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. a | 2. b | 3. a | 4. b | 5. a  |
| 6. b | 7. a | 8. a | 9. b | 10. a |

**E. WRITING**

**1. Underline the cause a highlight its effect in each of the following sentences.**

1. Her computer stopped working due to a virus.
2. Environmental pollution mainly affects animal by causing harm to their living environment, making it toxic for them to live.
3. The water is polluted, so the fish are dead.
4. As for animals, plants, and especially trees, can be destroyed by acid rains.
5. She set fire to the curtain first before the whole house burnt down.
6. Human activities have a negative effect on the ecosystem, destroying crucial layers of it and causing an even more negative effect on the upper layers.
7. We can't see the stars at night because of too much light.
8. The fumes from motorbike, cars make people cough.

**2. Work with partner, discuss the causes and effects of air pollution.**

Causes	Effects
1. exhausted gases from vehicles	- breathing problems
2. using poison in agriculture	- respiratory and heart problems
3. burning fossil fuels	- global warming
4. household and farming chemicals	- acid rain
5. industrial smoke	- depletion of ozone layer

**3. From the outline, write a paragraph from 80 to 100 words about causes or effects of air pollution.**

*Sample essay: Causes of air pollution*

When air gets polluted with dust, smoke, motor vehicles, mills and factories is called air pollution. There are different kinds of reasons causing air pollution. The three most popular causes are using poison in agriculture, burning of fossil fuels and industrial smoke.

First of all is using poison in agriculture, farmers often use insecticides, pesticides and fertilizers in agriculture. These get mixed with air and causes air pollution. Besides, Ammonia is a very common by product from agriculture related activities and is one of the most hazardous gases in the atmosphere.

The second reasons is burning of fossil fuels like coal, petroleum and other factory combustibles is one of the major causes of air pollution. Smoke emitting from vehicles like buses, trucks, jeeps, cars, trains, airplanes causes air pollution.

The last one is industrial smoke. In mills and factories, large amount of carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons, organic compounds, and chemicals is emitted that causes air pollution. It is true that mills and factories can be found at every corner of the world that cause a huge amount of harmful gases that are the major causes of air pollution.

In the long run, it can be said that it is the right time to protect air pollution. To create a better place to live in for the human being and wilderness we have stop air pollution.

## UNIT 7: POLLUTION

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the words that has different stress pattern in each line.**

1. A                  2. C                  3. C                  4. B                  5. A

**2. Underline the words ending in *-ic*, circle the words ending in *-al* in the following sentences. Mark the stress in the word containing *-ic* and *-al*.**

1. She made some gram'matical mistakes in her writing.
2. What's your favorite his'torical movie?
3. 'Chemical waste has been dumped into the ocean, so the fish and a'quatic animals have died.
4. I couldn't think of a logical way to advise Detective Jackson.
5. The laboratory is busy now on a new scien'tific experiment.
6. Too much stress can lead to 'physical disease.

#### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

**1. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete these sentences.**

1. D	2. D	3. C	4. A	5. B
6. C	7. B	8. C	9. A	10. D

**2. Complete the sentence by filling in a cause or an effect as required.**

1. Melanie did not go to school yesterday because she was sick.
2. Due to the traffic jam, Jason was late for work again.
3. If all students in my class come, there won't be enough space in the car for each.
4. Mai works late every Friday so that she can have Saturday and Sunday off.
5. Owing to a good marketing strategy, the tickets were all sold out.
6. Global warming leads to rising sea levels.
7. I woke up late this morning because my alarm clock did not ring.
8. A big ships spill oil in Pacific ocean which causes many aquatic animals and plants die.

**3. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

1. will do	2. will help	3. rains	4. learn	5. would buy
6. would pass	7. repaired	8. sold	9. would invite	10. is

#### C. SPEAKING

**Part 1: Two-way discussion**

1. Yes, it is
2. There are many causes leading to pollution such as: smoke from burning of fossil fuels, exhaust from factories and industries, fumes from vehicles, using if insecticides, pesticides and fertilizers in agricultural activities.
3. Air pollution can harm our bodies in many ways. It causes a range of short-term respiratory symptoms, including coughing, throat irritation, chest tightness, wheezing, and shortness of breath as well as long-term damage and aggravation of other diseases. future the
4. Yes, I think in the Government will have more solutions to keep the air clean.
5. People can reduce the pollution by doing these things:
  - Don't throw trash on the streets or rivers.
  - Don't burn plastic bags or fossil fuels.
  - Walk more instead of riding cars or motorbikes.
  - Buy only environmentally friendly goods whenever we can

## Part 2: Reference answers

### Some suggestions to control air pollution:

- Use public transportation, ride bike or walk more.
- Slow down when you drive. You'll use less gas and thereby produce less pollution.
- Don't idle. Idling is running the vehicle, instead of turning it off, when it's sitting still or parked longer than 10 seconds. If all Canadians avoided idling for just five minutes every day, we could prevent more than two million tones of carbon dioxide from entering the atmosphere. That's like taking 380,000 cars off the road.
- Use cleaner fuels. Cleaner fuels (alternative fuels) are low-polluting fuels that can be used in motor vehicles instead of gasoline or diesel. Examples include ethanol, methanol, natural gas and electricity.
- Drive slowly on unpaved roads and other dirt surfaces so that your vehicle doesn't kick up dust.
- Plant a tree or garden at home or school.
- Be an environmentally friendly shopper. Buy products that don't have a lot of packaging and can be recycled.

## D. READING

### 1. Now match the words with their correct descriptions.

1. F                  2. D                  3. B                  4. C                  5. A                  6. E

### 2. Read the text again then answer the questions below.

1. Pollution is the degradation of natural environment by external substances introduced directly or indirectly.
2. Pollution occurs when ecosystems can not get rid of substances introduced into the environment.
3. The sources of pollution are numerous.
4. The pollutants can be natural disasters or the result of human activity, such as oil spills, chemical spills, nuclear accidents.
5. Three effects of pollution: destruction of the biodiversity, increased mortality of the human and animal species, destruction of natural habitat.
6. Yes, they should.

## E. WRITING

### 1. Complete the sentence with a logical phrase or clause in the box.

1. B                  2. F                  3. D                  4. H  
5. A                  6. E                  7. C                  8. G

### 2. Discuss and find solution for some kinds of pollution below. Number 1 has been done for you.

<b>1. Noise pollution</b>	- create public awareness about noise pollution
	- build industries, airports, bus and transport terminals and railway stations far from living places.
	- plant trees along the road to reduce noise
<b>2. Light pollution</b>	- start with the light switch
	- consider replacing outdoor lights with intelligently designed, low-glare fixtures
	- replace conventional high-energy bulbs with efficient outdoor CFLs and LED floodlights
<b>3. Visual pollution</b>	- billboards should be allowed to hang at roadside for a specific period of time after they should be removed
	- wires should be stretched by following a well-planned design
	- clean your house and neighborhood regularly
<b>4. Radioactive pollution</b>	- handle the radiation waste in standard
	- control nuclear accidents
	- reduce using radioactive materials including the nuclear reactors, industries and laboratories

## UNIT 8: ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

1. C                  2. C                  3. B                  4. D                  5. D

**2. Read the sentences aloud then underline and mark stress on the words ending in -ese and -ee.**

1. He decided to act as a sort of refer'ee.
2. The document is filled with education'ese.
3. The typed pages were full of confusing legalese.
4. At least he was never an absent'ee in heart.
5. TV and newspaper journalists admit journal'ese phrases.
6. Do you agr'ee or disagr'ee with Tim's idea?
7. One of the most difficult language to learn is Japan'ese.
8. Refer'ee blew to end the match between MU and Arsenal.

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

**1. Write nationality of these countries.**

- |             |             |              |              |                 |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. Japanese | 2. Canadian | 3. Nepalese  | 4. Taiwanese | 5. Portuguese   |
| 6. Scottish | 7. Chinese  | 8. Australia | 9. Welsh     | 10. Singaporean |

**2. Write the name of the country under its symbol.**

- |              |            |              |                |              |
|--------------|------------|--------------|----------------|--------------|
| 1. Singapore | 2. the USA | 3. Canada    | 4. Philippines | 5. England   |
| 6. Egypt     | 7. Germany | 8. Australia | 9. New Zealand | 10. Malaysia |

**3. Complete each sentence with the suitable form of word provided.**

- |                |                 |               |              |
|----------------|-----------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. famous      | 2. unemployment | 3. friendship | 4. national  |
| 5. celebration | 6. iconic       | 7. peaceful   | 8. legendary |

**4. Give the correct form of the verb in brackets.**

- |                   |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. is             | 2. have visited         |
| 3. have organized | 4. has become/ attracts |
| 5. has been       | 6. includes             |
| 7. takes place    | 8. is taking part in    |
| 9. is             | 10. are parading        |

**5. Put in the correct tense of the verb in brackets. Each colony**

- |         |               |                      |
|---------|---------------|----------------------|
| 1. live | 2. has        | 3. is always buzzing |
| 4. is   | 5. will grab  | 6. is                |
| 7. take | 8. enter      | 9. fly               |
| 10. do  | 11. has found | 12. have been told   |

**6. Underline the odd one out.**

- |                   |                  |             |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------|
| 1. England        | 2. body language | 3. desert   |
| 4. cattle station | 5. museum        | 6. employee |

**7. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. C | 3. D | 4. A | 5. A  |
| 6. D | 7. B | 8. D | 9. D | 10. C |

### C. SPEAKING

**1. Complete the conversation with available phrase in the box.**

1. This is my first time here.
2. I'm from Seoul, Korea.
3. I went to San Francisco and Los Angeles.
4. I am only here for the three days.
5. My family is waiting for me.

**2. Work with partners, discuss and write the name of each place under the picture then decide where they are. The first one has been done for you.**

- |                                    |                          |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The Statue of Liberty - The USA | 2. Stonehenge – The UK   |
| 3. Mount Rushmore – The USA        | 4. Big Ben - The UK      |
| 5. Golden Gate Bridge - The UK     | 6. White House - The USA |

#### D. READING

**1. Read the text and choose the best answer for each sentence.**

1. D            2. B            3. D            4. D            5. A

**2. United States Crossword**

- |           |           |                |            |
|-----------|-----------|----------------|------------|
| 1. Third  | 2. Three  | 3. Rainforests | 4. America |
| 5. Alaska | 6. Hawaii | 7. World       | 8. Islands |

**3. Read the text and choose the best answer for each sentence.**

1. D            2. C            3. A            4. A            5. D

#### E. WRITING

**1. Reorder the words to make meaningful sentence.**

1. California is home to the most iconic theme park in the world.
2. The Golden Gate Bridge in San Francisco is an icon of this famous city.
3. Australia is home to unique animals like the kangaroo and koala.
4. Scotland is famous for its historic centuries-old castles.
5. Australia has the biggest cattle station in the world.
6. The traditional garment of Scottish men is kilt.

**2. List some famous places in The United State you know.**

White House, Denali National Park, Las Vegas, Niagara Falls, Golden Gate Bridge, Yellowstone, Manhattan, Grand Canyon...

# UNIT 8: ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.**

1. D            2. C            3. A            4. B

**2. Mark the stress of each word then say the words aloud.**

1. officia'lese	5. presen'tee
2. compute'rese	6. guaran'tee
3. appin'tee	7. lega'lese
4. confe'ree	8. commi'ttee

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

**1. Complete the sentence with a suitable word in the box. There are more words than you need.**

1. C            2. H            3. A            4. G  
 5. F            6. D            7. B            8. E

**3. Make the sentence with the present perfect tense.**

1. Have you ever kept a pet for more than three years?
2. Have you eaten Thai food before?
3. She has not studied French for ten years.
4. Why have you done your homework already?
5. I have known him for three months.
6. She has not seen 'The Lord of the Rings'.
7. Who has he met recently?
8. They haven't visited St. Paul's Cathedral yet.

**4. Give the correct form of verb in brackets.**

- |                      |                                |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. is reading        | 2. are we having               |
| 3. comes             | 4. isn't studying/ is watching |
| 5. do you go         | 6. takes                       |
| 7. is raining        | 8. Do you like                 |
| 9. Does she often go | 10. don't drink                |

### C. SPEAKING

**Reorder the sentences to make a conversation about booking the ticket. Then practise it with your friend.**

**Your answer:** C – E – F – B – A – D – M – G – H – I – K – L

### D. READING

**1. Read the text then choose the best answer.**

1. d            2. c            3. b            4. c

**2. Read the text again then fill in the blank with a suitable word or phrase from the text.**

1. Indies        2. Portugal        3. 1492        4. Indians

### E. WRITING

Sample answer:

There is one magical place where my family vacations to most summers. It is quiet, relaxing, beautiful, magnificent, and inspiring. Located in Saranac Lake, in rural New York, this is where my family has some of the best times. We stay in a calm and serene cabin where my Aunt and Uncle live.

During the holiday we do many activities together such as hiking, swimming, fishing, canoeing, and boating on the lake. Also, playing board games and watching movies when it's rainy, having cookies down on the dock, or playing a good game of hide and seek in the woods. Vacations to the lake are like an escape from the outside world, and a chance to see nature and still have fun. Every summer is guaranteed to be a blast, in rain or shine.

To conclude, my vacations to the lake will always remain memorable and special. I hope that one day I will be to continue tradition my family. Through the years, I have always been sort of jealous of my friends who told about extravagant vacations to paradise, but I have soon realized that I would never trade my experiences for any of theirs. Why? Because I have something that they will never have. I have a family that loves and cares for each other, and would do anything to make everyone happy. I hope a lifetimes worth of memories from only a few days. Finally, I have joy.

## UNIT 9: NATURAL DISASTERS

### A. PHONETICS

**1.** Look at the pictures and write -logy or -graphy to complete the words in the spaces. Then read out loud the words.

- |              |                |                |                |
|--------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| a. geography | b. biology     | c. photography | d. archaeology |
| e. zoology   | f. meteorology | g. radiography | h. biography   |

**2.** Complete the sentences with the words in 1. Then say them aloud.

- |                |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. geography   | 2. biography   | 3. Meteorology |
| 4. Radiography | 5. archaeology | 6. biology     |

**3.** Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. A | 4. D | 5. B |
|------|------|------|------|------|

### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**1.** Look at the pictures and write the words in the spaces provided.

- |                      |                |
|----------------------|----------------|
| 1. Volcanic eruption | 2. Earthquake  |
| 3. Tsunami           | 4. Flood       |
| 5. Drought           | 6. Tornado     |
| 7. Hurricane         | 8. Forest fire |
| 9. Landslide         | 10. Sandstorm  |

**2.** Make a sentence with a natural disaster in.

1. A volcanic eruption can destroy crops severely which are planted around the volcano.
2. An Earthquake can destroy hundreds of houses and kill a lot of people.
3. Tsunami can be defined as a tidal wave.
4. Water is often contaminated after a flood.
5. Many plants were died by the drought last year.
6. A tornado is formed by strong winds moving in a circle.
7. A hurricane can reach the wind speed of at least 75 km per hour.
8. Forest fires often occur in Summer and spread very quickly if it is windy.
9. Landslides often happen after a pouring rain.
10. Sandstorms usually happen in deserts.

**3.** Match the words in column A to their definition in column B.

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. e | 2. g | 3. i | 4. a | 5. h  |
| 6. j | 7. d | 8. b | 9. c | 10. f |

**4.** Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. D | 4. A | 5. A  |
| 6. B | 7. C | 8. D | 9. C | 10. B |

**5.** Read the paragraph below and fill in each blank with a suitable word from the boxes.

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. B | 4. D | 5. C |
|------|------|------|------|------|

**6.** Complete the sentences, using the correct passive forms of the verbs in brackets.

- |                             |                          |
|-----------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. are planted              | 2. was cleared           |
| 3. will be sent             | 4. was rebuilt           |
| 5. had been evacuated       | 6. had been already sent |
| 7. were destroyed/ happened | 8. were killed           |
| 9. will be polluted         | 10. was caused           |

**7. Give the correct forms of the words in brackets to complete the sentences.**

- |                |               |                |            |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|------------|
| 1. dangerous   | 2. safety     | 3. electricity | 4. erupted |
| 5. preparation | 6. natural    | 7. shortage    | 8. stormy  |
| 9. erosion     | 10. destroyed | 11. damage     | 12. scarce |

**8. Complete each sentence with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.**

- |                                 |                           |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. didn't drink/ drank          | 2. sent/ had....received  |
| 3. had made/ sat down/ finished | 4. had broken             |
| 5. had examined/ gave           | 6. built/ was/ happened   |
| 7. went/ were                   | 8. had seen               |
| 9. died/ had never met          | 10. became/ had taken off |

**C. SPEAKING****1. Talk about the impacts of a natural disaster. Think of a natural disaster that you have seen or heard from others then list the impacts.**

Natural disasters	Impacts
a hurricane	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- cause millions of dollars of damage</li> <li>- bring death to large numbers of people</li> <li>- cause sudden floods</li> <li>- contaminate water</li> </ul>

**2. Put the following in the correct order to make a dialogue. Then practise it with your friend.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. E | 2. I | 3. A | 4. J | 5. C  |
| 6. B | 7. H | 8. F | 9. D | 10. G |

**3. Match the sentences to the responses. Then practise with your friends. It can be more than one answer.**

- |         |      |         |      |            |
|---------|------|---------|------|------------|
| 1. b, a | 2. d | 3. a, b | 4. e | 5. c, a, b |
|---------|------|---------|------|------------|

**D. READING****Text 1:****1. Read the passage and choose the best answer A, B, C or D to each question below.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. D | 3. B | 4. C | 5. A |
|------|------|------|------|------|

**2. Read the passage again. Decide these sentences TRUE (T) or FALSE (F)**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. F | 2. T | 3. F | 4. F | 5. T | 6. T |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

**Text 2. Read the text and answer the questions below.**

1. Mount St. Helens blew up in May 1980.
2. Mud was made up of melted snow and ash.
3. The heat melted the snow.
4. It was Toutle River.
5. People wore masks on their noses to keep the ash out of their lungs.
6. Snow plows moved ash off the roads.
7. They learn about the volcano.
8. The ash sank to the bottom.
9. A volcano was talked about in this story.
10. Roads and bridges were rebuilt when things calmed down.

**Text 3. Read the passage below.****1. Match the words in column A to the exact definitions in column B.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. f | 2. j | 3. h | 4. g | 5. b |
|------|------|------|------|------|

6. e            7. i            8. d            9. c            10. a

**2. Read the passage again and choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D.**

1. B            2. D            3. B            4. A            5. A

**E. WRITING**

**1. Change these sentences into passive voice.**

1. Some aid was sent to earthquake Japanese victims by Viet Nam in 2014.
2. Radio waves were discovered by Heinrich Hertz.
3. Enough food and water were prepared for a disaster.
4. Many houses and buildings were hit by a tornado.
5. Some raincoats had been bought before the weather forecast was heard.
6. Our windows are going to be repaired by my father tomorrow.
7. Almost all of my house was damaged by the earthquake.
8. More trees should be planted to prevent some natural disasters.
9. I been told a story about a tsunami occurring in his country by my e-pal.
10. My car is going to serviced by a mechanic tomorrow because it was damaged severely by yesterday's storm.

**2. Complete the table below. Think of a natural disaster and make a list of preparation for the disaster.**

Name of a natural disaster	Preparation
Eg: A tornado	<p><b>Before a tornado</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Learn the signs of a tornado: a dark, greenish sky; large hail; dark, low clouds; and loud roaring sound.</li> </ul> <p><b>During a tornado</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Go to the safe place in your home and make sure you stay away from the windows.</li> <li>- Get inside a sturdy building.</li> <li>- Lie down and cover your head with your hands.</li> </ul> <p><b>After a tornado</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Stay away from any damage you see.</li> <li>- Listen to the radio or TV</li> </ul>

**3. Use the information from the table in Ex 2 and write about how to prepare when a natural disaster happens. (80-100 words)**

*Your writing:*

Preparation can protect us from being victims of a natural disaster. To prepare for a tornado, firstly we have to learn the signs of a tornado so that we can know that there will be a tornado. The signs include a dark, greenish sky; large hail; dark, low clouds; and loud roaring sounds. During the tornado, we should go to the safe places in our house and get away from the window because the windows can be broken into pieces by the tornado and people can get injured if they are close to them. More importantly, we should lie down and cover our heads with our hands to avoid being hit into our heads. After the tornado, we should get away from any damage and listen to the news.

# UNIT 9: NATURAL DISASTERS

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Circle the words with the underlined parts pronounced differently from the others.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. D | 3. A | 4. B |
| 5. B | 6. B | 7. C | 8. D |

**2. Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. D | 2. A | 3. D | 4. B |
| 5. C |      |      |      |

### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

**1. Odd one out**

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. D | 4. A | 5. D |
|------|------|------|------|------|

**2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D to complete each sentence.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. A | 3. C | 4. A | 5. D  |
| 6. C | 7. A | 8. C | 9. A | 10. D |

**3. Complete the sentences, using the correct form of the words from the box.**

- |                 |              |              |              |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. explored     | 2. attracted | 3. active    | 4. died      |
| 5. contaminated | 6. destroyed | 7. poisonous | 8. emergency |

**4. Give the correct form of the verbs in the brackets.**

- |                                |                           |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. felt/ had eaten/ drunk      | 2. Did you hear           |
| 3. had already arrived/ struck | 4. erupted/ had evacuated |
| 5. saw                         | 6. saw/ helped/ was       |
| 7. took/ learnt                | 8. had had/ left          |

**5. Choose the correct answer A, B, or C to complete the passage below.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. B | 4. C | 5. B | 6. A |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

### C. SPEAKING

**1. Complete the table using some suggestions. Then choose some of earthquake impacts and talk about them to your partner. Use some passive voice in your speaking. (use future simple tense and modal verb)**

<b>Social impacts</b>	<b>Economic impacts</b>	<b>Environmental impacts</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Many people are killed or injured.</li> <li>- Homes are destroyed.</li> <li>- Transport and communication links are disrupted.</li> <li>- Water supplies are contaminated.</li> <li>- Disease may spread.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Shops and business are destroyed.</li> <li>- Looting may take place.</li> <li>- The damage to transport and communication links can make trade difficult.</li> <li>- The cost of rebuilding a settlement is high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The built landscapes are destroyed.</li> <li>- Fires can spread due to gas pipe explosions.</li> <li>- Fires can damage areas of woodland.</li> <li>- Landslides may occur.</li> <li>- Tsunamis may cause flooding in coastal areas.</li> <li>- Important natural and human landmarks may be lost.</li> </ul>

### D. READING

#### Text 1

- |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. B | 2. D | 3. C | 4. A | 5. D |
|------|------|------|------|------|

**Text 2**

1. The people in Puerto Rico are the first to give names to hurricanes.
2. All the hurricanes that strike the east of the United States begin in the small island of Puerto.
3. Because it is the day on which it arrives.
4. A weatherman began the idea of giving girls' name to hurricanes?
5. The story described how Maria grew and developed, and how she changed the lives of people when she struck the United States.
5. One of their duties was to warn American ships and planes when a storm was coming.

**E. WRITING**

- 1. Fill in the gaps to complete the passage below.**

1. B	2. A	3. C	4. A	5. C
6. A	7. B	8. B	9. A	10. C

- 2. Think about a natural disaster and write about its effects.**

**Your writing:**

Flood is defined as a large amount of water spread from a river, sea etc. that covers an area that is normally dry. When a flood happens, it causes a lot of damage and effects to people. Many houses and buildings are inundated. As a result, people have nowhere to live and cook. Second, water is also contaminated so there is not enough clean water for people and other animals to drink. Their health will be affected. Flood can help bacteria develop and spread as well.

**WRITTEN TEST 3****A. PHONETICS****1. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.**

1. A            2. B            3. D            4. B            5. A

**B. GRAMMAR AND VOCABULARY****1. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D for each sentence.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. D | 3. B | 4. C | 5. A  |
| 6. B | 7. D | 8. B | 9. C | 10. A |

**2. Complete the sentence with correct form of the verb.**

- |                           |                   |
|---------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. will save/ don't waste | 4. didn't realise |
| 2. had built              | 5. Had            |
| 3. were damaged           | 6. would run      |

**C. READING****1. Read the text then answer the questions below.**

1. Wales is a country with two languages: Welsh and English.
2. The north west has the highest ratio of Welsh to English speakers.
3. The road signs are bilingual.
4. The daffodil and the leek are national flowers of Wale.
5. According to legend, Saint David ordered his Welsh soldiers to identify themselves by wearing leeks on their helmets in an ancient battle against the Saxons that took place in a leek field.

**2. Read the text and choose the correct answers.**

1. D            2. B            3. A            4. D            5. B

**D. WRITING****1. Reorder the words to make meaningful sentence.**

1. The temperature today is one degree higher than yesterday.
2. English is an official language in Singapore.
3. The USA, the United Kingdom and New Zealand are all English speaking countries.
4. What do you like about Scotland?
5. Aquatic plants may also die because of the polluted water.

**2. Rewrite the sentences using the word given in brackets**

1. I can understand him if he doesn't speak so quickly.
2. Smoke from mills, factories and industry can lead to health problems like asthma and lung diseases.
3. We don't trust Lan because of her bad behaviours.
4. In spite of taking a taxi, he still arrived late for school.

**E. SPEAKING**

*Students review the previous lessons to answer the questions*

# **UNIT 10: COMMUNICATION**

## A. PHONETICS

**1. Complete the following words with -ity or -tive, and then say them aloud.**

- |                |                 |                |                |
|----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. activity    | 2. positive     | 3. possibility | 4. repetitive  |
| 5. competitive | 6. active       | 7. nationality | 8. community   |
| 9. opportunity | 10. interactive | 11. quality    | 12. talkative  |
| 13. sensitive  | 14. attractive  | 15. creativity | 16. generosity |

**2. Circle the word with a different stress pattern from the others.**

1. C                  2. A                  3. D                  4. B                  5. C

## B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

1. Choose the best answer A, B, C, or D to complete these sentences below.

1. B                  2. B                  3. D                  4. A                  5. D  
6. B                  7. A                  8. D                  9. A                  10. B

**2. Circle the one out.**

1. B                  2. A                  3. C                  4. A                  5. D

**3.** Fill in the blank with the words from the box to complete the sentences.

- |                      |            |                         |
|----------------------|------------|-------------------------|
| 1. texting           | 2. signs   | 3. face-to-face meeting |
| 4. body language     | 5. letters | 6. video chat           |
| 7. facial expression | 8. emails  |                         |

4. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verb in the brackets.

- |               |                      |                        |
|---------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. writing    | 2. to install        | 3. to participate      |
| 4. to bring   | 5. spending/ playing | 6. to cook/ to examine |
| 7. explaining | 8. stealing          |                        |

**5. Complete the text with the past simple, present continuous or future continuous.**

- |                      |                    |                            |
|----------------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. was               | 2. are helping     | 3. will be learning        |
| 4. was/ wrote        | 5. will be talking | 6. made/ didn't answer/ am |
| 7. will be inventing | 8. are planning    |                            |

**6. Choose the correct answer to each blank to complete the passage.**

1. B                  2. C                  3. B                  4. A  
5. B                  6. D                  7. A                  8. B

### **7. Solve the crossword puzzle.**

(1)	D	A	N	C	I	N	G	
(2)	P	H	O	T	O	S		
(3)	S	M		I	L	I	N	G
(4)	E	M	A	I	L	S		
(5)	B	O	D	Y	L	A	N	G
(6)	S	I	G	N	S			
(7)	P	A	I	N	T	I	N	G
(8)	P	H	O	N	E	C	A	L
(9)	C	H	A	T	T	I	N	G
(10)	L	E	T	T	E	R	S	
(11)	S	I		N	G	I	N	G

(12)	V	I	D	E	O	C	O	N	F	E	R	E	N	C	E
(13)	T	E	X	T	I	N	N	G							

8. Find an antonym (an opposite adjective) to each adjective given in the table by adding a prefix "in" or "un". Then write the noun form of these adjectives. The first one is done for you.

Adjectives	Antonyms	Nouns
0. active	inactive	activity
1. competitive	uncompetitive	competition
2. imaginative	unimaginative	imagination
3. sensitive	insensitive	sensitivity
4. creative	uncreative	creativity
5. productive	unproductive	productivity
6. expensive	inexpensive	expense
7. effective	ineffective	effect
8. attractive	unattractive	attraction
9. responsive	unresponsive	response

### C. SPEAKING

- Match the sentences in column A with the sentences in column B to make mini- dialogues. Then practice it to your partner.  
1. c      2. e      3. b      4. a      5. d
- Choose one way of communicating to make friends which you like best. Talk about it and explain the reasons why you like it.

I like talking somebody in face-to face meetings or chat rooms. There are some reasons why I like this way of communication. First, I can talk to them directly and find out what they are saying is true or not. It is more difficult for someone to tell lies when we communicate face to face with each other because you are looking at them and their facial expression. When you chat or email with someone, they can tell anything and it may be lies. Second, I can improve my skills of communication in society. You gain experience from the reality, so it is more valuable than what you can learn when you only sit in your room and look at the computer screen.

### D. READING

- Read the following passage and choose the item (a, b, c, or d) that best answers each of the questions about it.  
1. A      2. B      3. D      4. A      5. D
- Read the passage below.

1. Complete the table about meanings of flower colors with the information from the passage. Write no more than four words.

Flower Colors	Meanings
Blue	peace, openness, serenity
Pink	youth, innocence, joy
Purple	dignity, pride success
Red	desire, strength, passionate love
Yellow	joy, new beginnings happiness
White	innocence, humility, modesty, elegance
Orange	a gift of thanks, sincerity

Green	health, resilience, good fortune, youth
-------	---

2. Write the colour(s) of flowers which can be chosen for the following situations. Explain your answers.

1. Your choice: green

**Your explanations:**

Because green symbolizes healths. When you give him or her green flowers, you mean you wish their good health and want them recover soon.

2. Your choice: white

**Your explanations:** White color represents purity, elegance and they perfect bridal flowers.

3. Your choice: yellow

**Your explanations:** Yellow is a color of friendship and represents joy and happiness. You want to congratulation your mate on their joy.

4. Your choice: orange

**Your explanations:** Orange means you are understanding your friend's feeling and is considered as a gesture or heartfelt sincerity.

5. Your choice: red

**Your explanations:** The red color represents passionate love.

6. Your choice: purple

**Your explanations:** The color symbolizes pride and success.

7. Your choice: pink, orange, green

**Your explanations:** It means you want to share with her joy and happiness and wish her and the child good health.

8. Your choice: blue

**Your explanations:** Blue color represents peace, openness, so this color helps you show your high expectation of making friend with others.

3. Read the text then do the tasks below.

1. Complete the table with the information about abbreviations in texting from the text.

Short forms	Long forms
BRB	be right back
PMFJI	pardon me for jumping in
A/S/L	age, sex and location
15/M/NY	15 years old/ Male/ New York
OTF	on the floor
LOL	laughing out loud
ROFL	rolling on the floor laughing
GTG	got to go
TTYL	talk to you later

2. Answer the questions.

- Because talking online is trying talking to six people at once.
- Because “talking” online can exchange three or four words.
- It takes cleverness, concentration and quick fingers.
- BRB is used to tell six friends you have to leave for a moment to take care of your little brother.
- PMFJI is used for entering a conversation.
- I type that “I am OTF (=on the floor), or LOL (=laughing out loud), or join the two into ROFL (=rolling on the floor laughing)”.

7. I used TTYL when it's time to get back to work or go to bed.
8. Because it takes more time to hold down the “shift” key and use capitals.

## E. WRITING

**1. These sentences are texting shorthand. Can you rewrite these sentences to original ones?**

- |                                     |                         |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I'll be 5 minutes late.          | 6. See you soon.        |
| 2. Wait for me a minute.            | 7. See you tomorrow.    |
| 3. What are you doing this weekend? | 8. Why do you do that?  |
| 4. How are you today?               | 9. Thanks for the gift. |
| 5. I'll be right back.              | 10. Oh my god!          |

**2. Rewrite the sentences as long as keep the similar meaning to the original one.**

1. It took people more time to communicate with each other in the past.
2. Letters used to be written to keep in touch with her when he lived far from her.
3. When was that phone used by our teacher?
4. Why don't we go on a picnic this weekend?
5. He suggested watching a comedy.  
“Let's watch a comedy” he said.
6. “Why don't you go to bed after taking some medicines?” said his friend.
7. What about eating out and then going to the amusement park?
8. Despite the bad weather, the football match was not cancelled.

**3. Choose one of these topics below:**

**a. A mobile phone text message.**

Hello, Mary. How r u 2day? Would u like 2 come 2 my birthday party this weekend? I'm happy 2 hear from u s. CUL. Yours.

**b. An email.**

Dear my new friend,

My name is Lien, I am 4 years old. I study at a secondary school in my hometown. I have to study many subjects at school. My favourite subjects are Maths, Literature and English. On the weekend, I usually visit my grandparents. I love them so much. My family has 5 people: parents, brother and sister. My parents are farmers who work very hard on the field under the sun. My brother and sister are students. I love my family a lot. I love travelling around the world to exchange the culture and customs. In my free time I like reading books and listen to music. These activities help me relax and feel comfortable after studying hard or working under pressure. What about you? What do you do in your free time? Please share with me.

I'm looking forward form you soon.

**c. Students do by themselves.**

# UNIT 10: COMMUNICATION

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

- 1. Choose the word marked A, B, C, or D that the underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.**

1. C                  2. B                  3. A                  4. D                  5. B

- 2. Choose the answer that has a different stress pattern from the others.**

1. A                  2. C                  3. A                  4. D                  5. D                  6. B

### B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

- 1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.**

1. D                  2. C                  3. B                  4. D                  5. B                  6. A

- 2. Give the correct form of verbs in the brackets.**

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. will be video chatting | 6. will you be watching |
| 2. is trying              | 7. is writing           |
| 3. will be working        | 8. will be controlling  |
| 4. took                   | 9. was/ kept            |
| 5. will be communicating  | 10. is always making    |

- 3. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the words in the brackets.**

- |                 |                |                 |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. competitive  | 2. generosity  | 3. unattractive |
| 4. communicated | 5. nationality | 6. active       |
| 7. expression   | 8. popularity  |                 |

- 4. Choose the word (A, B, C, or D) that best fits each of the blank spaces.**

1. B                  2. C                  3. B                  4. C                  5. C                  6. C

- 5. Choose the correct answer to complete the passage.**

1. D                  2. B                  3. A                  4. C                  5. B                  6. C  
7. A

### C. SPEAKING

- 2. Work with your partner. Discuss the following questions.**

I think people can communicate with each other through their minds. I mean they only think to the people they want to talk with. Then their thoughts will be transferred to exactly who they want to talk to. They will wear a device like a pair of glasses. It has all functions of a phone and a computer. It will be controlled by thoughts. You don't need to use your hands to click button or type letters. Its colors are diverse. You can choose any color you like. When you don't want to talk to anyone, you can take it off and put it on your bag. It is easy to bring to every where because it has the same size as a pair of glasses.

### D. READING

- 1. Read the following passage and choose the item (a, B, C or D) that best answers each of the questions about it.**

1. B                  2. D                  3. D                  4. B                  5. A

- 2. Read the text below then choose the correct answer A, B, C or D for each question below.**

1. B                  2. C                  3. B                  4. D                  5. A  
6. D                  7. D

- 3. Read the passage then answer the questions.**

1. B

2. A

3. B

4. A

5. D

## E. WRITING

### 1. Reorder these sentences to complete the email.

1. How are you today?
2. I'm very happy to receive your letter in which you tell me about your favourite color.
3. So I'm writing this letter to you to tell you my favourite color, too.
4. I like green color very much.
5. As you know, green color is the color of nature.
6. It represents for life, health, resilience, good fortune and youth.
7. Green color makes me feel refreshing and comfortable when seeing it.
8. So I usually put a green flower vase in my room to help me relax after studying hard or under pressure.
9. If you have something to tell me more about you, write to me.
10. Hope to see you soon.

### 2. Write an email to your friend and talk about your favorite colors and their meaning. Use the information in the picture below.

# UNIT 11: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

## A. PHONETICS

### 1. Odd one out.

1. A            2. D            3. B            4. B            5. C

### 2. Put the following words in the correct column. Then say them aloud.

/un/	/im/
polluted, balanced, grateful, advisable, common, productive, reasonable, musical, natural, kind, friendly, sympathetic	balance, polite, moral, mortal, possible, mediate, pious, mense

## B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

### 1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.

1. C            2. B            3. C            4. A  
5. A            6. B            7. A            8. C

### 2. Which prefix form the opposite of these words?

1. un            2. im            3. im            4. im  
5. un            6. un            7. un            8. un

### 3. Complete the tables and mark the main stress on each word. The number 1 has been done for you as an example.

1. in'vention    2. deve'lopment    3. ad'vense    4. im'provement    5. 'analyze    6. ar'range

### 4. Name the thing mentioned in the following picture.

- |             |                   |                         |               |
|-------------|-------------------|-------------------------|---------------|
| 1. computer | 2. laptop         | 3. headphone            | 4. keyboard   |
| 5. tablet   | 6. television/ TV | 7. refrigerator/ fridge | 8. Dishwasher |

### 5. Fill the gaps with suitable adjective from the box.

1. careful    2. foggy    3. famous    4. knowledge    5. dangerous    6. painful

### 6. Choose the correct answer A, B or C in each line.

1. A            2. A            3. B            4. C            5. A  
6. A            7. A            8. B            9. C            10. B

### 7. Each the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify the mistakes.

1. C            2. C            3. C            4. C            5. A  
6. D            7. D            8. C            9. D            10. A

## C. SPEAKING

### 1. Put the conversation in the correct order then practice with your partners.

1. C            2. E            3. A            4. F            5. D  
6. K            7. B            8. L            9. I            10. M  
11. G            12. J            13. H

### 2. Give your own opinion for the following idea:

**"Men and women view technological devices differently"**

Answer:

I agree with the statement. For starters, men are usually more obsessed with gadgets. They are more like children with the way they want to play with the latest gizmos and learn all their new functions. They are constantly playing with their new toys. I also think that gadgets are a kind of ego for men. I mean they often compare their new toys with each other to see who has a best one. Women, on the other hand, are more practical and see devices more rationally as a means to communicate with others or to perform a particular function. Of course, this is pretty stereotyped but it seems to hold true for most men and women.

**D. READING****1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. A      2. B      3. C      4. D      5. D

**2. Read the text and choose the correct answer A, B or C in each line.**1. C      2. A      3. B      4. A  
5. C      6. A      7. C      8. C**3. Read the text again and answer the questions.**

1. They used drums.
2. They used horses.
3. It's Pony Express.
4. It's in 1865.
5. It's Charles Wheatstone one of the most famous scientists in England at that time.

**E. WRITING****1. Write a question with *going to* for each situation. Use the words in brackets.**

1. What is she going to wear tonight?
2. Where are you going to put it?
3. How is he going to travel next month?
4. Who are you going to invite to barbecue party next Sunday?
5. When is he going to arrive?
6. What are you going to cook for dinner?
7. Is he going to repair it tomorrow?
8. Are you going to visit them Sunday?
9. What are you going to prepare for a picnic next week?
10. What is she going to buy?

**2. Complete the following sentences.**

1. 'd send	2. 'd bought	3. didn't speak	4. 'd failed
5. he couldn't	6. looked	7. were going	8. weren't listening

**3. Using the given words/phrases to make meaningful sentences.**

1. I love London. I will probably go there next week.
2. What are you going to wear at the party tonight?
3. I haven't made up my mind yet. But I think I will find something nice in my mum's wardrobe.
4. I completely forget about this. Give me a moment, I will do it now.
5. Tonight, I am going to stay home. I've rented a video.
6. I feel dreadful. I am going to be sick.
7. If you have any problem, I will help you.
8. The weather forecast says it isn't going to snow tomorrow.
9. I promise that I won't come late.
10. Look at those clouds. It is going to rain now.

# UNIT 11: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY

## TEST YOURSELF

### A. PHONETICS

**1. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

1. C            2. A            3. B            4. B            5. A

**2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

1. A            2. C            3. A            4. D            5. A

### B. GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

**1. Put the words in the correct form.**

- |              |                               |            |                  |
|--------------|-------------------------------|------------|------------------|
| 1. invention | 2. information/ entertainment | 3. popular | 4. interactive   |
| 5. viewers   | 6. convenience                | 7. costly  | 8. communication |

**2. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. A | 3. C | 4. D |
| 5. B | 6. B | 7. D | 8. A |

**3. Choose the correct tense of verb in each line.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. A | 4. B | 5. A  |
| 6. C | 7. B | 8. A | 9. B | 10. B |

**4. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

- |      |      |      |      |       |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B | 5. A  |
| 6. B | 7. B | 8. A | 9. A | 10. A |

**5. Put the verbs into the correct form.**

1. I have bought two tickets. My wife and I are going to see a movie tonight.
2. Mary thinks Peter will get the job.
3. A: "I am going to move from my house tomorrow. I have packed everything."  
B: "I will come and help you."
4. If I have enough money, I will buy a new car.
5. I will be there at four o'clock, I promise.
6. The meeting is going to take place at 4 p.m.
7. If you eat all of that cake, you will feel sick.
8. They are going to be at home at 10 o'clock because their son is staying alone at home.
9. Perhaps she won't be able to come tomorrow.
10. Because of the train delay, the meeting isn't going to take place at 10 o'clock.

**6. Choose the correct answer A, B or C in each line.**

- |      |      |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. B | 4. A | 5. A | 6. C |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

### C. SPEAKING

**1. Put the conversation in the correct then practice with your partners.**

- |      |      |      |      |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. G | 2. D | 3. F | 4. B |
| 5. E | 6. A | 7. H | 8. C |

**2. Answer the following questions according to the above dialogue.**

1. It's about mobile phone.
2. Yes, he does.
3. Yes, he does.

4. No, he doesn't. It's his sister.
5. It makes life a lot easier and more convenient.

**D. READING****1. Read the above passage and then answer the questions.**

1. A                  2. C                  3. D                  4. B                  5. A

**2. Read the text again and choose the correct answers.**

1. A                  2. D                  3. C                  4. C                  5. A

**E. WRITING****1. Put the verbs into the correct form (will, going to, simple present or present progressive).**

1. won't go        2. will fail        3. will sell        4. is going to take    5. isn't going to rain  
 6. will you do     7. will she be     8. will the sun set    9. will get        10. are you going to take

**2. Complete the following sentences.**

1. John said that Mandy was at home.
2. Max told me that Frank often read a book.
3. Susan said to me that she was watching TV.
4. Simon said that David had been ill.
5. Peggy told me that the girls had helped in the house.
6. Richard said to me that he was going to ride a skateboard.
7. Stephen and Claire told me that they had cleaned the windows.
8. Charles remarked that he hadn't had time to do his homework.
9. Mrs. Jones told me that her mother would be 50 years old.
10. Jean said that the boss had to sign the letter.

**3. Each of the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify and correct the mistakes.**

1. B- gave        2. C- highest        3. C- for        4. C- pleased        5. D- to lace  
 6. C- to        7. A- turned        8. D- on        9. D- live        10. D- of

## UNIT 12: LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS

### A. PHONETICS

- 1. Put the words in the correct column. Some words may be in two column.**

-ful	-less
use, delight, success, hope, care, help, harm, peace, waste, beauty, wonder	speech, rest, child, odour, care, harm, job, use

- 2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

1. C      2. C      3. A      4. A      5. C

### B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

- 1. Match the terms with the suitable definitions.**

1. d      2. e      3. c      4. b      5. a

- 2. Choose the correct answer A or B in each line.**

1. B      2. A      3. A      4. B      5. A  
6. A      7. A      8. B      9. B      10. B

- 3. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. A      2. C      3. D      4. A      5. A  
6. C      7. A

- 4. Each of the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify the mistakes.**

1. A      2. D      3. C      4. C      5. A  
6. C      7. A      8. A      9. A      10. C

- 5. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D.**

1. A      2. B      3. C      4. C      5. D  
6. D      7. C      8. A      9. A      10. D

- 6. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.**

1. may rain	2. may come
3. might have asked	4. might have woken
5. might offer	6. may i go
7. might have done	8. might have burnt
9. may be	10. may rain

### C. SPEAKING

- 1. Put the sentences in the correct order to have a conversation then practice it with your partners.**

1. B      2. G      3. D      4. A  
5. C      6. F      7. H      8. E

- 2. Read the conversation again and answer the questions.**

1. No, he doesn't.
2. It's because there is no air and water there.
3. No, they don't.
4. Yes, it is.
5. No, he isn't.

- 3. Put the conversation in the correct order then practice with your partners.**

1. E      2. B      3. H      4. D      5. F  
6. I      7. A      8. G      9. C

**D. READING****1. Read the text and answer the questions.**

1. It's to discover whether/if other planets support life or not.
2. In 2009.
3. It's to find habitable planets.
4. It has discovered five new Earth-sized planets.
5. No, they aren't.
6. At least three years (and possibly longer).
7. They are there to be liquid water (not frozen or gas) so the distance from the planet's sun and suitable temperature, the correct amount of air.
8. No, it's half the size of earth.
9. Yes, it is.
10. No, it isn't.

**2. Read the text and answer the questions.**

1. If you decide to take a space trip, you will have to run a lot, swim everyday, do aerobics and push-ups to have excellent physical condition.
2. If you want to show you are in perfect health, you must get a letter from the doctor.
3. You can see pictures of the Earth: your country, interesting places, the oceans, the big rivers, the tall mountains.
4. You can see those scenes 16 times a day.
5. We can talk on the walls or on the ceiling.

**3. Read the text again and choose the correct answer.**

1. A                  2. B                  3. D                  4. A

**E. WRITING****1. Put the sentences in the correct order.**

1. May I go out Mom?
2. You may eat some cake Jim.
3. He doesn't know what to do, he might ask Wendy.
4. He may come late.
5. You might have done the washing-up!
6. May this year bring you happiness and health!
7. He may be on holidays.
8. He might have been killed!
9. He may have phoned while I was having a shower.
10. There might be minerals in Mars.

**2. Rewrite the following sentences without changing the meaning of the first sentence.**

1. He told them to open their books.
2. Jim asked Linda where she was going.
3. John asked me which way they had gone.
4. I told her to bring it back if it didn't fit.
5. She told us not to try to open it then.
6. I asked her whether/ if it was going to be a fine day that day.
7. She said that he was not at home.
8. The girl wanted to know whether/ if the bus station was far away.
9. Tony told Ann not to stay out late.

10. He asked her to let him borrow her bike.

**3. Rewrite the following sentences without changing the meaning of the first sentence.**

1. She wanted to know whether I was going by train.
2. She asked us not to use too much hot water.
3. She invited me to come to her party.
4. She told them not to do it again.
5. She asked whether/ if Mr. Brown sent the potatoes to me.
6. She told the boys not to get their shoes dirty.
7. Mary asked what Peter wanted for lunch that day.
8. Peter asked Jean whether/ if he could borrow her typewriter.
9. The office manager wondered why he hadn't got a computer before.
10. John advised Amanda not to lend him any more money.

## UNIT 12: LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS

### TEST YOURSELF

#### A. PHONETICS

1. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.  
1. C      2. A      3. C      4. A      5. A
2. Mark the letter A, B, C, or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.  
1. B      2. C      3. C      4. A      5. B

#### B. GRAMMAR

1. Use the given words/phrases to complete the following sentences.

1. gravity	2. orbit	3. plant	4. space
5. minerals	6. geometric	7. extraterrestrial	8. Solar System

2. Complete the following passage.

1. B	2. D	3. B	4. A
5. C	6. B	7. B	8. D

3. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.

1. A	2. B	3. C	4. D
5. B	6. C	7. C	

4. Each of the sentences below has at least one mistake. Identify and correct the mistakes.

1. B- to finish	2. B- to take	3. B- of going	4. B- sing
5. D- mother	6. A- had	7. B- had	8. C- my

5. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.

1. A	2. B	3. B	4. C	5. D	6. C
------	------	------	------	------	------

6. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.

1. B	2. C	3. D	4. C	5. B
6. C	7. B	8. B	9. A	10. D

#### D. READING

1. Read the text and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. T	2. F	3. T	4. T	5. T
------	------	------	------	------

2. Read the following and mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate correct answer to each of the questions.

1. B	2. B	3. D	4. C	5. B
------	------	------	------	------

3. Read the text again and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. F	2. F	3. T	4. F	5. T
------	------	------	------	------

#### E. WRITING

1. Put the sentences in the correct order.

1. How closely are you following the space program now?
2. They can “prove” from the photography that you never left Earth orbit.
3. Do you think we’re doing in the quest to put people on Mars?
4. Neil Armstrong thought it was a good idea to have a stop-off point at the Moon.
5. People are talking about sending people to Mars in the 2020s?
6. It’s difficult to imagine a wholly private venture to send lots of people to Mars.

7. I don't think there is life on the moon.

**2. Complete the second sentences without changing the meaning of the first sentences.**

1. The doctor advised me not to lose weight.

2. Mary suggested going to the park.

3. Jack denied having broken the car.

4. She accused Michael of telling a lie.

5. Jane apologized for not going to Jack's birthday party next Sunday evening.

6. Katarina refused to help me with my homework.

7. John invited me to come to his party.

8. Mr. Brown warned the children not playing on the street.

9. They invited me to come on a picnic with them.

10. He asked me not to tell anybody what happened.

**WRITTEN TEST 4****Time: 45 minutes****A. PHONETICS**

- 1. Mark the letter A, B, C or D to indicate the word whose main stress is placed differently from the rest.**

1. A                  2. D                  3. B                  4. D

- 2. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.**

1. A                  2. B                  3. A                  4. C

**B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR**

- 1. Choose the correct answer A, B, C or D in each line.**

1. A                  2. B                  3. D                  4. B  
5. C                  6. A                  7. C                  8. D

- 2. Give the correct form of the verbs in the brackets.**

1. is repairing
2. did ... do/ was watching/ was playing
3. are crossing/ are
4. will be doing
5. takes

**C. READING**

- 1. Fill each blank with the correct form of the word given in capital letters.**

1. B                  2. C                  3. B                  4. C                  5. D                  6. A

- 2. Read the text again and decide whether the following statements are true (T) or false (F).**

1. T                  2. F                  3. T                  4. F                  5. T

**D. WRITTING**

- 1. Complete the second sentences without changing the meaning of the first.**

1. The teacher told the boys not to draw on the wall.
2. The nurse asked Mrs. Bingley when her little boy had been born.
3. The doctor advised Mr. Robert to take more exercise.
4. Anna asked her mother if she could have a new bicycle.

- 2. Change these sentences into passive voice.**

1. Body language is usually used by dogs to communicate with their owners and other dogs.
2. - He will be sent an email about next week's work tomorrow.  
- An email about next week's work will be sent to him tomorrow.
3. A video conference about environmental protection was organized.
4. Now Skype is being used to call for others without paying money.

**E. SPEAKING**

Student's answer.

# Mục Lục

<b>UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITIES .....</b>	1
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	7
<b>UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE.....</b>	12
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	19
<b>UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIETNAM .....</b>	23
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	29
<b>WRITTEN TEST 1.....</b>	36
<b>UNIT 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS .....</b>	41
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	48
<b>UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM .....</b>	54
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	61
<b>UNIT 6: FOLK TALES.....</b>	67
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	75
<b>WRITTEN TEST 2.....</b>	79
<b>UNIT 7: POLLUTION .....</b>	83
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	90
<b>UNIT 8: ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES .....</b>	94
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	101
<b>UNIT 9: NATURAL DISASTERS .....</b>	104
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	113
<b>WRITTEN TEST 3.....</b>	118
<b>UNIT 10: COMMUNICATION .....</b>	122
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	131
<b>UNIT 11: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY .....</b>	137
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	144
<b>UNIT 12: LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS .....</b>	150
<b>TEST YOURSELF .....</b>	158
<b>WRITTEN TEST 4.....</b>	164

<b>PHỤ LỤC CÓ ĐÁP ÁN</b>	167
<b>UNIT 1: LEISURE ACTIVITIES</b>	167
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	170
<b>UNIT 2: LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE</b>	172
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	175
<b>UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIETNAM</b>	177
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	180
<b>WRITTEN TEST 1</b>	183
<b>UNIT 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS</b>	184
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	187
<b>UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM</b>	189
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	191
<b>UNIT 6: FOLK TALES</b>	194
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	197
<b>WRITTEN TEST 2</b>	199
<b>UNIT 7: POLLUTION</b>	200
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	203
<b>UNIT 8: ENGLISH SPEAKING COUNTRIES</b>	205
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	207
<b>UNIT 9: NATURAL DISASTERS</b>	209
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	212
<b>WRITTEN TEST 3</b>	214
<b>UNIT 10: COMMUNICATION</b>	215
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	219
<b>UNIT 11: SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY</b>	221
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	223
<b>UNIT 12: LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS</b>	225
<b>TEST YOURSELF</b>	228
<b>WRITTEN TEST 4</b>	230